

*Oracle Berkeley DB*

*Installation and Build  
Guide*

*11g Release 2*





---

## Legal Notice

This documentation is distributed under an open source license. You may review the terms of this license at: <http://www.oracle.com/technology/software/products/berkeley-db/hdocs/oslicense.html>

Oracle, Berkeley DB, and Sleepycat are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle. All rights to these marks are reserved. No third-party use is permitted without the express prior written consent of Oracle.

Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

To obtain a copy of this document's original source code, please submit a request to the Oracle Technology Network forum at: <http://forums.oracle.com/forums/forum.jspa?forumID=271>

*Published 3/30/2010*

---

---

# Table of Contents

Preface .....	xv
Conventions Used in this Book .....	xv
For More Information .....	xv
1. Introduction .....	1
Installation Overview .....	1
2. System Installation Notes .....	2
File utility /etc/magic information .....	2
Magic information .....	2
Big-endian magic information .....	3
Little-endian magic information .....	6
Building with multiple versions of Berkeley DB .....	8
3. Debugging Applications .....	10
Introduction to debugging .....	10
Compile-time configuration .....	10
Run-time error information .....	11
Reviewing Berkeley DB log files .....	11
Augmenting the Log for Debugging .....	14
Extracting Committed Transactions and Transaction Status .....	15
Extracting Transaction Histories .....	15
Extracting File Histories .....	15
Extracting Page Histories .....	15
Other log processing tools .....	15
4. Building Berkeley DB for Windows .....	17
Building Berkeley DB for 32 bit Windows .....	17
Visual C++ .NET 2008 .....	17
Visual C++ .NET 2005 .....	17
Build results .....	18
Building Berkeley DB for 64-bit Windows .....	18
x64 build with Visual Studio 2005 or newer .....	18
Building Berkeley DB with Cygwin .....	18
Building the C++ API .....	18
Building the C++ STL API .....	19
Building the Java API .....	19
Building the C# API .....	19
Building the SQL API .....	20
Binary Compatibility With SQLite .....	20
Enabling Extensions .....	20
Building the JDBC Driver .....	20
Building the ODBC Driver .....	21
Configuring Your System .....	21
Building the Library .....	21
Installing the Library .....	22
Testing the ODBC Install .....	22
Building the Tcl API .....	22
Distributing DLLs .....	23
Building a small memory footprint library .....	23

Running the test suite under Windows .....	24
Building the software needed by the tests .....	24
Visual Studio 2005 or newer .....	24
Running the test suite under Windows .....	24
Building the software needed by the SQL tests .....	25
Visual Studio 2005 or newer .....	25
Windows notes .....	25
Windows FAQ .....	26
5. Building Berkeley DB for Windows Mobile .....	28
Building for Windows Mobile .....	28
Building Berkeley DB for Windows Mobile .....	28
Visual Studio 2005 .....	28
Build results .....	28
Changing Build Configuration Type .....	28
Building Berkeley DB for different target platforms .....	29
Visual Studio 2005 .....	29
Windows Mobile notes .....	29
Windows Mobile FAQ .....	30
6. Building Berkeley DB for UNIX/POSIX .....	32
Building for UNIX/POSIX .....	32
Building the Berkeley DB SQL Interface .....	32
Configuring Berkeley DB .....	33
Configuring the SQL Interface .....	38
Enabling Extensions .....	39
Building the JDBC Driver .....	39
Building the ODBC Driver .....	40
Configuring Your System .....	40
Building the Library .....	40
Testing the ODBC Driver .....	40
Building a small memory footprint library .....	41
Changing compile or load options .....	42
Installing Berkeley DB .....	43
Dynamic shared libraries .....	44
Running the test suite under UNIX .....	45
Building SQL Test Suite on Unix .....	46
Architecture independent FAQ .....	46
AIX .....	49
FreeBSD .....	51
HP-UX .....	51
IRIX .....	53
Linux .....	53
Mac OS X .....	54
OSF/1 .....	54
QNX .....	55
SCO .....	56
Solaris .....	56
SunOS .....	58
Ultrix .....	58
7. Building Berkeley DB for VxWorks .....	59

Building for VxWorks 5.4 and 5.5 .....	59
Building With Tornado 2.0 or Tornado 2.2 .....	59
Building for VxWorks 6.x .....	60
Building With Wind River Workbench using the Makefile .....	60
VxWorks notes .....	61
Building and Running the Demo Program .....	61
Building and Running the Utility Programs .....	61
VxWorks 5.4/5.5: shared memory .....	62
VxWorks 5.4/5.5: building a small memory footprint library .....	62
Support for Replication Manager .....	62
VxWorks FAQ .....	62
8. Upgrading from previous versions of Berkeley DB .....	66
Library version information .....	66
Upgrading Berkeley DB installations .....	66
9. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.8 applications to Berkeley DB 11gR2 .....	71
Introduction .....	71
db_sql Renamed to db_sql_codegen .....	71
DB_REP_CONF_NOAUTOINIT Replaced .....	71
Support for Multiple Client-to-Client Peers .....	71
Cryptography Support .....	71
DB_NOSYNC Flag to Flush Files .....	72
Dropped Support .....	72
Changing Stack Size .....	72
Berkeley DB 11g Release 2 Change Log .....	72
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes .....	72
New Features .....	72
Database Environment Changes .....	74
Access Method Changes .....	74
Locking Subsystem Changes .....	75
Logging Subsystem Changes .....	75
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes .....	75
Mutex Subsystem Changes .....	76
Tcl-specific API Changes .....	76
C#-specific API Changes .....	76
API Changes .....	76
Replication Changes .....	76
Transaction Subsystem Changes .....	77
Utility Changes .....	78
Example Changes .....	78
Deprecated Features .....	78
Configuration, Documentation, Sample Apps, Portability and Build Changes .....	78
Known Bugs .....	79
10. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.7 applications to Berkeley DB 4.8 .....	81
Introduction .....	81
Registering DPL Secondary Keys .....	81
Minor Change in Behavior of DB_MPOOLFILE->get .....	81
Dropped Support for fcntl System Calls .....	81
Upgrade Requirements .....	82
Berkeley DB 4.8.28 Change Log .....	82

Changes between 4.8.26 and 4.8.28:	82
Known bugs in 4.8	82
Changes between 4.8.24 and 4.8.26:	82
Changes between 4.8.21 and 4.8.24:	83
Changes between 4.7 and 4.8.21:	83
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:	83
New Features:	83
Database Environment Changes:	84
Concurrent Data Store Changes:	84
General Access Method Changes:	84
Btree Access Method Changes:	85
Hash Access Method Changes:	85
Queue Access Method Changes:	86
Recno Access Method Changes:	86
C-specific API Changes:	86
C++-specific API Changes:	86
Java-specific API Changes:	86
Direct Persistence Layer (DPL), Bindings and Collections API:	87
Tcl-specific API Changes:	88
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:	88
Replication Changes:	88
XA Resource Manager Changes:	90
Locking Subsystem Changes:	90
Logging Subsystem Changes:	91
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:	91
Mutex Subsystem Changes:	91
Test Suite Changes	92
Transaction Subsystem Changes:	92
Utility Changes:	92
Configuration, Documentation, Sample Application, Portability and Build Changes:	93
11. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.6 applications to Berkeley DB 4.7	95
Introduction	95
Run-time configuration	95
Replication API	95
Tcl API	95
DB_ENV->set_intermediate_dir	96
Log configuration	96
Upgrade Requirements	96
Berkeley DB 4.7.25 Change Log	96
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:	96
New Features:	96
Database Environment Changes:	97
Concurrent Data Store Changes:	97
General Access Method Changes:	97
Btree Access Method Changes:	98
Hash Access Method Changes:	98
Queue Access Method Changes:	98
Recno Access Method Changes:	98

C-specific API Changes: .....	98
Java-specific API Changes: .....	98
Direct Persistence Layer (DPL), Bindings and Collections API: .....	99
Tcl-specific API Changes: .....	99
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes: .....	100
Replication Changes: .....	100
XA Resource Manager Changes: .....	101
Locking Subsystem Changes: .....	101
Logging Subsystem Changes: .....	101
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes: .....	102
Mutex Subsystem Changes: .....	102
Transaction Subsystem Changes: .....	102
Utility Changes: .....	102
Configuration, Documentation, Sample Application, Portability and Build Changes: .....	103
12. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.5 applications to Berkeley DB 4.6 .....	104
Introduction .....	104
C API cursor handle method names .....	104
DB_MPOOLFILE->put .....	104
B_MPOOLFILE->set .....	104
Replication Events .....	105
DB_REP_FULL_ELECTION .....	105
Verbose Output .....	105
DB_VERB_REPLICATION .....	106
Windows 9X .....	106
Upgrade Requirements .....	106
Berkeley DB 4.6.21 Change Log .....	106
4.6.21 Patches: .....	106
4.6.19 Patches .....	107
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes: .....	107
New Features: .....	107
Database Environment Changes: .....	108
Concurrent Data Store Changes: .....	109
General Access Method Changes: .....	109
Btree Access Method Changes: .....	110
Hash Access Method Changes: .....	110
Queue Access Method Changes: .....	110
Recno Access Method Changes: .....	110
C++-specific API Changes: .....	110
Java-specific API Changes: .....	110
Java collections and bind API Changes: .....	111
Tcl-specific API Changes: .....	111
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes: .....	111
Replication Changes: .....	111
XA Resource Manager Changes: .....	113
Locking Subsystem Changes: .....	113
Logging Subsystem Changes: .....	113
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes: .....	113
Transaction Subsystem Changes: .....	113



Utility Changes:	113
Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:	114
13. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.4 applications to Berkeley DB 4.5	115
Introduction	115
deprecated interfaces	115
DB->set_isalive	115
DB_ENV->rep_elect	115
Replication method naming	116
Replication events	116
Memory Pool API	116
DB_ENV->set_paniccall	116
DB->set_pagesize	116
Collections API	117
--enable-pthread_self	117
Recno backing text source files	117
Application-specific logging	117
Upgrade Requirements	118
Berkeley DB 4.5.20 Change Log	118
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:	118
New Features:	118
Database Environment Changes:	118
Concurrent Data Store Changes:	119
General Access Method Changes:	119
Btree Access Method Changes:	119
Hash Access Method Changes:	120
Queue Access Method Changes:	120
Recno Access Method Changes:	120
C++-specific API Changes:	120
Java-specific API Changes:	120
Java collections and bind API Changes:	120
Tcl-specific API Changes:	121
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:	121
Replication Changes:	121
XA Resource Manager Changes:	121
Locking Subsystem Changes:	121
Logging Subsystem Changes:	122
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:	122
Transaction Subsystem Changes:	122
Utility Changes:	123
Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:	123
14. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.3 applications to Berkeley DB 4.4	124
Introduction	124
DB_AUTO_COMMIT	124
DB_DEGREE_2, DB_DIRTY_READ	124
DB_JOINENV	124
mutexes	125
DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len	125
lock statistics	126
Upgrade Requirements	126

Berkeley DB 4.4.16 Change Log .....	126
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes: .....	126
New Features: .....	126
Database Environment Changes: .....	127
Concurrent Data Store Changes: .....	127
General Access Method Changes: .....	128
Btree Access Method Changes: .....	128
Hash Access Method Changes: .....	129
Queue Access Method Changes: .....	129
Recno Access Method Changes .....	129
C++-specific API Changes: .....	129
Java-specific API Changes: .....	129
Java collections and bind API Changes: .....	130
Tcl-specific API Changes: .....	131
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes: .....	131
Replication Changes: .....	131
XA Resource Manager Changes: .....	132
Locking Subsystem Changes: .....	132
Logging Subsystem Changes: .....	132
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes: .....	133
Transaction Subsystem Changes: .....	133
Utility Changes: .....	134
Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes: .....	134
Berkeley DB 4.4.20 Change Log .....	135
Changes since Berkeley DB 4.4.16: .....	135
15. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.2 applications to Berkeley DB 4.3 .....	136
Introduction .....	136
Java .....	136
DB_ENV->set_errcall, DB->set_errcall .....	137
DBCursor->c_put .....	137
DB->stat .....	137
DB_ENV->set_verbose .....	137
Logging .....	138
DB_FILEOPEN .....	138
ENOMEM and DbMemoryException .....	138
Replication .....	138
Run-time configuration .....	139
Upgrade Requirements .....	139
Berkeley DB 4.3.29 Change Log .....	139
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes: .....	139
New Features: .....	139
Database Environment Changes: .....	139
Concurrent Data Store Changes: .....	141
General Access Method Changes: .....	141
Btree Access Method Changes: .....	142
Hash Access Method Changes: .....	142
Queue Access Method Changes: .....	143
Recno Access Method Changes .....	143
C++-specific API Changes: .....	143

Java-specific API Changes: .....	144
Tcl-specific API Changes: .....	144
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes: .....	145
Replication Changes: .....	145
XA Resource Manager Changes: .....	146
Locking Subsystem Changes: .....	146
Logging Subsystem Changes: .....	147
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes: .....	147
Transaction Subsystem Changes: .....	147
Utility Changes: .....	148
Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes: .....	149
16. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.1 applications to Berkeley DB 4.2 .....	151
Introduction .....	151
Java .....	151
Queue access method .....	152
DB_CHKSUM_SHA1 .....	153
DB_CLIENT .....	153
DB->del .....	153
DB->set_cache_priority .....	153
DB->verify .....	153
DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED .....	154
Replication .....	154
Replication initialization .....	154
Database methods and replication clients .....	154
DB_ENV->rep_process_message() .....	155
Client replication environments .....	155
Tcl API .....	155
Upgrade Requirements .....	155
Berkeley DB 4.2.52 Change Log .....	155
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes: .....	155
New Features: .....	155
Database Environment Changes: .....	156
Concurrent Data Store Changes: .....	158
General Access Method Changes: .....	158
Btree Access Method Changes: .....	159
Hash Access Method Changes: .....	160
Queue Access Method Changes: .....	160
Recno Access Method Changes: .....	161
C++-specific API Changes: .....	162
Java-specific API Changes: .....	162
Tcl-specific API Changes: .....	163
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes: .....	164
Replication Changes: .....	164
XA Resource Manager Changes: .....	167
Locking Subsystem Changes: .....	167
Logging Subsystem Changes: .....	168
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes: .....	169
Transaction Subsystem Changes: .....	169
Utility Changes: .....	170

Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:	170
17. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.0 applications to Berkeley DB 4.1	173
Introduction	173
DB_EXCL	173
DB->associate, DB->open, DB->remove, DB->rename	173
DB_ENV->log_register	175
st_flushcommit	175
DB_CHECKPOINT, DB_CURLSN	175
DB_INCOMPLETE	176
DB_ENV->memp_sync	176
DB->stat.hash_nelem	176
Java exceptions	176
C++ exceptions	176
Application-specific logging and recovery	177
Upgrade Requirements	177
Berkeley DB 4.1.24 and 4.1.25 Change Log	177
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:	177
Major New Features:	177
General Environment Changes:	178
General Access Method Changes:	179
Btree Access Method Changes:	180
Hash Access Method Changes:	180
Queue Access Method Changes:	181
Recno Access Method Changes:	181
C++-specific API Changes:	181
Java-specific API Changes:	182
Tcl-specific API Changes:	182
RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:	182
Replication Changes:	182
XA Resource Manager Changes:	182
Locking Subsystem Changes:	183
Logging Subsystem Changes:	183
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:	183
Transaction Subsystem Changes:	184
Utility Changes:	184
Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:	184
Berkeley DB 4.1.25 Change Log	186
18. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.3 applications to Berkeley DB 4.0	187
Introduction	187
db_deadlock	187
lock_XXX	187
log_XXX	187
memp_XXX	188
txn_XXX	189
db_env_set_XXX	190
DB_ENV->set_server	191
DB_ENV->set_lk_max	191
DB_ENV->lock_id_free	191
Java CLASSPATH environment variable	191

C++ ostream objects .....	192
application-specific recovery .....	192
Upgrade Requirements .....	193
4.0.14 Change Log .....	193
Major New Features: .....	193
General Environment Changes: .....	193
General Access Method Changes: .....	194
Btree Access Method Changes: .....	194
Hash Access Method Changes: .....	194
Queue Access Method Changes: .....	194
Recno Access Method Changes: .....	194
C++ API Changes: .....	194
Java API Changes: .....	194
Tcl API Changes: .....	194
RPC Client/Server Changes: .....	195
XA Resource Manager Changes: .....	195
Locking Subsystem Changes: .....	195
Logging Subsystem Changes: .....	195
Memory Pool Subsystem Changes: .....	195
Transaction Subsystem Changes: .....	196
Utility Changes: .....	196
Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes: .....	196
Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes: .....	196
19. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.2 applications to Berkeley DB 3.3 .....	198
introduction .....	198
DB_ENV->set_server .....	198
DB->get_type .....	198
DB->get_byteswapped .....	198
DB->set_malloc, DB->set_realloc .....	198
DB_LOCK_CONFLICT .....	199
memp_fget, EIO .....	199
txn_prepare .....	200
--enable-dynamic, --enable-shared .....	200
--disable-bigfile .....	200
Upgrade Requirements .....	200
20. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.1 applications to Berkeley DB 3.2 .....	201
introduction .....	201
DB_ENV->set_flags .....	201
DB callback functions, app_private field .....	201
Logically renumbering records .....	201
DB_INCOMPLETE .....	202
DB_ENV->set_tx_recover .....	202
DB_ENV->set_mutexlocks .....	202
Java and C++ object reuse .....	203
Java java.io.FileNotFoundException .....	203
db_dump .....	203
Upgrade Requirements .....	203
21. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.0 applications to Berkeley DB 3.1 .....	204
introduction .....	204

DB_ENV->open, DB_ENV->remove .....	204
DB_ENV->set_tx_recover .....	204
DB_ENV->set_feedback, DB->set_feedback .....	204
DB_ENV->set_paniccall, DB->set_paniccall .....	205
DB->put .....	205
identical duplicate data items .....	206
DB->stat .....	206
DB_SYSTEM_MEM .....	206
log_register .....	207
memp_register .....	207
txn_checkpoint .....	207
environment configuration .....	207
Tcl API .....	208
DB_TMP_DIR .....	208
log file pre-allocation .....	208
Upgrade Requirements .....	209
22. Upgrading Berkeley DB 2.X applications to Berkeley DB 3.0 .....	210
introduction .....	210
environment open/close/unlink .....	210
function arguments .....	213
DB_ENV structure .....	214
database open/close .....	215
db_xa_open .....	216
DB structure .....	216
DBINFO structure .....	217
DB->join .....	218
DB->stat .....	219
DB->sync and DB->close .....	219
lock_put .....	219
lock_detect .....	219
lock_stat .....	219
log_register .....	219
log_stat .....	219
memp_stat .....	220
txn_begin .....	220
txn_commit .....	220
txn_stat .....	220
DB_RMW .....	220
DB_LOCK_NOTHELD .....	220
EAGAIN .....	221
EACCES .....	221
db_jump_set .....	221
db_value_set .....	222
DbEnv class for C++ and Java .....	222
Db class for C++ and Java .....	224
additional C++ changes .....	224
additional Java changes .....	224
Upgrade Requirements .....	225
23. Upgrading Berkeley DB 1.85 or 1.86 applications to Berkeley DB 2.0 .....	226

---

Introduction .....	226
System Integration .....	226
Converting Applications .....	227
Upgrade Requirements .....	228
24. Test Suite .....	229
Running the test suite .....	229
Running SQL Test Suite on Unix .....	229
Running SQL Test Suite on Windows .....	230
Test suite FAQ .....	230

---

# Preface

Welcome to Berkeley DB (DB). This document describes how to build, install and upgrade Berkeley DB

This document reflects Berkeley DB 11g Release 2, which provides DB library version 11.2.5.0.

## Conventions Used in this Book

The following typographical conventions are used within in this manual:

Structure names are represented in monospaced font, as are method names. For example: "DB->open() is a method on a DB handle."

Variable or non-literal text is presented in *italics*. For example: "Go to your *DB\_INSTALL* directory."

Program examples are displayed in a monospaced font on a shaded background. For example:

```
/* File: gettingstarted_common.h */
typedef struct stock_dbs {
    DB *inventory_dbp; /* Database containing inventory information */
    DB *vendor_dbp;    /* Database containing vendor information */

    char *db_home_dir; /* Directory containing the database files */
    char *inventory_db_name; /* Name of the inventory database */
    char *vendor_db_name; /* Name of the vendor database */
} STOCK_DBS;
```

### Note

Finally, notes of interest are represented using a note block such as this.

## For More Information

Beyond this manual, you may also find the following sources of information useful when building a DB application:

- [Getting Started with Transaction Processing for C](#)
- [Berkeley DB Getting Started with Replicated Applications for C](#)
- [Berkeley DB C API](#)
- [Berkeley DB C++ API](#)
- [Berkeley DB STL API](#)
- [Berkeley DB TCL API](#)
- [Berkeley DB Programmer's Reference Guide](#)



- 
- [Berkeley DB Getting Started with the SQL APIs](#)

---

# Chapter 1. Introduction

Welcome to the Berkeley DB. This manual describes how to configure, build and install Berkeley DB. Installation of DB for all of the platforms it officially supports is described in this manual. Upgrade instructions and release notes for every major version of this product are also described here.

Note that some operating systems and distributions might provide DB, either by default or as part of an installation option. If so, those platforms will have installation instructions for DB specific to them. In this situation, you should see the documentation for your operating system or distribution provider for information on how to get DB on your platform.

## Installation Overview

Berkeley DB is an open-source product, and as such it is usually offered in source-code format. This means that placing DB on your platform requires you to configure the build scripts, compile it, and then install the product onto your host system. The exception to this are Microsoft Windows platforms for which a binary installer is available. Note that for Windows platforms, you can still compile the product from source if you desire.

For \*nix systems, including the BSD and Linux systems, the usual configure, make and make install installation process is used to place DB on your platform.

For information on building and installing Berkeley DB on:

- Microsoft Windows, see [Building Berkeley DB for Windows \(page 17\)](#) or [Building Berkeley DB for Windows Mobile \(page 28\)](#).
- Unix/POSIX – including Linux, BSD, and Mac OS X – see [Building Berkeley DB for UNIX/POSIX \(page 32\)](#).
- VxWorks, see [Building Berkeley DB for VxWorks \(page 59\)](#).

---

## Chapter 2. System Installation Notes

### File utility /etc/magic information

The `file(1)` utility is a UNIX utility that examines and classifies files, based on information found in its database of file types, the `/etc/magic` file. The following information may be added to your system's `/etc/magic` file to enable `file(1)` to correctly identify Berkeley DB database files.

The `file(1)` utility `magic(5)` information for the standard System V UNIX implementation of the `file(1)` utility is included in the Berkeley DB distribution for both big-endian (for example, Sparc) and little-endian (for example, x86) architectures. See [Big-endian magic information \(page 3\)](#) and [Little-endian magic information \(page 6\)](#) respectively for this information.

The `file(1)` utility `magic(5)` information for Release 3.X of Ian Darwin's implementation of the file utility (as distributed by FreeBSD and most Linux distributions) is included in the Berkeley DB distribution. This `magic.txt` information is correct for both big-endian and little-endian architectures. See the next section for this information.

### Magic information

```
# Berkeley DB
#
# Ian Darwin's file /etc/magic files: big/little-endian version.
#
# Hash 1.85/1.86 databases store metadata in network byte order.
# Btree 1.85/1.86 databases store the metadata in host byte order.
# Hash and Btree 2.X and later databases store the metadata in
# host byte order.

0 long 0x00061561 Berkeley DB
>8 belong 4321
>>4 belong >2 1.86
>>4 belong <3 1.85
>>4 belong >0 (Hash, version %d, native byte-order)
>8 belong 1234
>>4 belong >2 1.86
>>4 belong <3 1.85
>>4 belong >0 (Hash, version %d, little-endian)

0 belong 0x00061561 Berkeley DB
>8 belong 4321
>>4 belong >2 1.86
>>4 belong <3 1.85
>>4 belong >0 (Hash, version %d, big-endian)
>8 belong 1234
>>4 belong >2 1.86
>>4 belong <3 1.85
>>4 belong >0 (Hash, version %d, native byte-order)
```

```

0 long 0x00053162 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86
>4 long >0 (Btree, version %d, native byte-order)
0 belong 0x00053162 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86
>4 belong >0 (Btree, version %d, big-endian)
0 lelong 0x00053162 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86
>4 lelong >0 (Btree, version %d, little-endian)

12 long 0x00061561 Berkeley DB
>16 long >0 (Hash, version %d, native byte-order)
12 belong 0x00061561 Berkeley DB
>16 belong >0 (Hash, version %d, big-endian)
12 lelong 0x00061561 Berkeley DB
>16 lelong >0 (Hash, version %d, little-endian)

12 long 0x00053162 Berkeley DB
>16 long >0 (Btree, version %d, native byte-order)
12 belong 0x00053162 Berkeley DB
>16 belong >0 (Btree, version %d, big-endian)
12 lelong 0x00053162 Berkeley DB
>16 lelong >0 (Btree, version %d, little-endian)

12 long 0x00042253 Berkeley DB
>16 long >0 (Queue, version %d, native byte-order)
12 belong 0x00042253 Berkeley DB
>16 belong >0 (Queue, version %d, big-endian)
12 lelong 0x00042253 Berkeley DB
>16 lelong >0 (Queue, version %d, little-endian)

12 long 0x00040988 Berkeley DB
>16 long >0 (Log, version %d, native byte-order)
12 belong 0x00040988 Berkeley DB
>16 belong >0 (Log, version %d, big-endian)
12 lelong 0x00040988 Berkeley DB
>16 lelong >0 (Log, version %d, little-endian)

```

## Big-endian magic information

```

# Berkeley DB
#
# System V /etc/magic files: big-endian version.
#
# Hash 1.85/1.86 databases store metadata in network byte order.
# Btree 1.85/1.86 databases store the metadata in host byte order.
# Hash and Btree 2.X and later databases store the metadata in
# host byte order.

0 long 0x00053162 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86 (Btree,
>4 long 0x00000002 version 2,
>4 long 0x00000003 version 3,

```

```
>0 long 0x00053162 native byte-order)

0 long 0x62310500 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86 (Btree,
>4 long 0x02000000 version 2,
>4 long 0x03000000 version 3,
>0 long 0x62310500 little-endian)

12 long 0x00053162 Berkeley DB (Btree,
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,
>12 long 0x00053162 native byte-order)

12 long 0x62310500 Berkeley DB (Btree,
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,
>12 long 0x62310500 little-endian)

0 long 0x00061561 Berkeley DB
>4 long >2 1.86
>4 long <3 1.85
>0 long 0x00061561 (Hash,
>4 long 2 version 2,
>4 long 3 version 3,
>8 long 0x00004D2 little-endian)
>8 long 0x000010E1 native byte-order)

12 long 0x00061561 Berkeley DB (Hash,
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,
>12 long 0x00061561 native byte-order)

12 long 0x61150600 Berkeley DB (Hash,
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,
```

```
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,  
>12 long 0x61150600 little-endian)  
  
12 long 0x00042253 Berkeley DB (Queue,  
>16 long 0x00000001 version 1,  
>16 long 0x00000002 version 2,  
>16 long 0x00000003 version 3,  
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,  
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,  
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,  
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,  
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,  
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,  
>12 long 0x00042253 native byte-order)  
  
12 long 0x53220400 Berkeley DB (Queue,  
>16 long 0x01000000 version 1,  
>16 long 0x02000000 version 2,  
>16 long 0x03000000 version 3,  
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,  
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,  
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,  
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,  
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,  
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,  
>12 long 0x53220400 little-endian)  
  
12 long 0x00040988 Berkeley DB (Log,  
>16 long 0x00000001 version 1,  
>16 long 0x00000002 version 2,  
>16 long 0x00000003 version 3,  
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,  
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,  
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,  
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,  
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,  
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,  
>16 long 0x0000000a version 10,  
>16 long 0x0000000b version 11,  
>16 long 0x0000000c version 12,  
>16 long 0x0000000d version 13,  
>16 long 0x0000000e version 14,  
>16 long 0x0000000f version 15,  
>12 long 0x00040988 native byte-order)  
  
12 long 0x88090400 Berkeley DB (Log,  
>16 long 0x01000000 version 1,  
>16 long 0x02000000 version 2,  
>16 long 0x03000000 version 3,
```

```

>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,
>16 long 0x0a000000 version 10,
>16 long 0x0b000000 version 11,
>16 long 0x0c000000 version 12,
>16 long 0x0d000000 version 13,
>16 long 0x0e000000 version 14,
>16 long 0x0f000000 version 15,
>12 long 0x88090400 little-endian)

```

## Little-endian magic information

```

# Berkeley DB
#
# System V /etc/magic files: little-endian version.
#
# Hash 1.85/1.86 databases store metadata in network byte order.
# Btree 1.85/1.86 databases store the metadata in host byte order.
# Hash and Btree 2.X and later databases store the metadata in
# host byte order.

0 long 0x00053162 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86 (Btree,
>4 long 0x00000002 version 2,
>4 long 0x00000003 version 3,
>0 long 0x00053162 native byte-order)

0 long 0x62310500 Berkeley DB 1.85/1.86 (Btree,
>4 long 0x02000000 version 2,
>4 long 0x03000000 version 3,
>0 long 0x62310500 big-endian)

12 long 0x00053162 Berkeley DB (Btree,
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,
>12 long 0x00053162 native byte-order)

12 long 0x62310500 Berkeley DB (Btree,
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,

```

```
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,  
>12 long 0x62310500 big-endian)  
  
0 long 0x61150600 Berkeley DB  
>4 long >0x02000000 1.86  
>4 long <0x03000000 1.85  
>0 long 0x00061561 (Hash,  
>4 long 0x02000000 version 2,  
>4 long 0x03000000 version 3,  
>8 long 0xD2040000 native byte-order)  
>8 long 0xE1100000 big-endian)  
  
12 long 0x00061561 Berkeley DB (Hash,  
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,  
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,  
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,  
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,  
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,  
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,  
>12 long 0x00061561 native byte-order)  
  
12 long 0x61150600 Berkeley DB (Hash,  
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,  
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,  
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,  
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,  
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,  
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,  
>12 long 0x61150600 big-endian)  
  
12 long 0x00042253 Berkeley DB (Queue,  
>16 long 0x00000001 version 1,  
>16 long 0x00000002 version 2,  
>16 long 0x00000003 version 3,  
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,  
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,  
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,  
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,  
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,  
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,  
>12 long 0x00042253 native byte-order)  
  
12 long 0x53220400 Berkeley DB (Queue,  
>16 long 0x01000000 version 1,  
>16 long 0x02000000 version 2,  
>16 long 0x03000000 version 3,  
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,  
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,  
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,
```



```
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,  
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,  
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,  
>12 long 0x53220400 big-endian)  
  
12 long 0x00040988 Berkeley DB (Log,  
>16 long 0x00000001 version 1,  
>16 long 0x00000002 version 2,  
>16 long 0x00000003 version 3,  
>16 long 0x00000004 version 4,  
>16 long 0x00000005 version 5,  
>16 long 0x00000006 version 6,  
>16 long 0x00000007 version 7,  
>16 long 0x00000008 version 8,  
>16 long 0x00000009 version 9,  
>16 long 0x0000000a version 10,  
>16 long 0x0000000b version 11,  
>16 long 0x0000000c version 12,  
>16 long 0x0000000d version 13,  
>16 long 0x0000000e version 14,  
>16 long 0x0000000f version 15,  
>12 long 0x00040988 native byte-order)  
  
12 long 0x88090400 Berkeley DB (Log,  
>16 long 0x01000000 version 1,  
>16 long 0x02000000 version 2,  
>16 long 0x03000000 version 3,  
>16 long 0x04000000 version 4,  
>16 long 0x05000000 version 5,  
>16 long 0x06000000 version 6,  
>16 long 0x07000000 version 7,  
>16 long 0x08000000 version 8,  
>16 long 0x09000000 version 9,  
>16 long 0x0a000000 version 10,  
>16 long 0x0b000000 version 11,  
>16 long 0x0c000000 version 12,  
>16 long 0x0d000000 version 13,  
>16 long 0x0e000000 version 14,  
>16 long 0x0f000000 version 15,  
>12 long 0x88090400 big-endian)
```

## Building with multiple versions of Berkeley DB

In some cases it may be necessary to build applications which include multiple versions of Berkeley DB. Examples include applications which include software from other vendors, or applications running on a system where the system C library itself uses Berkeley DB. In such cases, the two versions of Berkeley DB may be incompatible, that is, they may have different external and internal interfaces, and may even have different underlying database formats.

To create a Berkeley DB library whose symbols won't collide with other Berkeley DB libraries (or other application or library modules, for that matter), configure Berkeley DB using the `--with-uniquename=NAME` configuration option, and then build Berkeley DB as usual. (Note that `--with-uniquename=NAME` only affects the Berkeley DB C language library build; loading multiple versions of the C++ or Java APIs will require additional work.) The modified symbol names are hidden from the application in the Berkeley DB header files, that is, there is no need for the application to be aware that it is using a special library build as long as it includes the appropriate Berkeley DB header file.

If "NAME" is not specified when configuring with `--with-uniquename=NAME`, a default value built from the major and minor numbers of the Berkeley DB release will be used. It is rarely necessary to specify NAME; using the major and minor release numbers will ensure that only one copy of the library will be loaded into the application unless two distinct versions really are necessary.

When distributing any library software that uses Berkeley DB, or any software which will be recompiled by users for their systems, we recommend two things: First, include the Berkeley DB release as part of your release. This will insulate your software from potential Berkeley DB API changes as well as simplifying your coding because you will only have to code to a single version of the Berkeley DB API instead of adapting at compile time to whatever version of Berkeley DB happens to be installed on the target system. Second, use `--with-uniquename=NAME` when configuring Berkeley DB, because that will insure that you do not unexpectedly collide with other application code or a library already installed on the target system.

---

# Chapter 3. Debugging Applications

## Introduction to debugging

Because Berkeley DB is an embedded library, debugging applications that use Berkeley DB is both harder and easier than debugging a separate server. Debugging can be harder because when a problem arises, it is not always readily apparent whether the problem is in the application, is in the database library, or is a result of an unexpected interaction between the two. Debugging can be easier because it is easier to track down a problem when you can review a stack trace rather than deciphering interprocess communication messages. This chapter is intended to assist you with debugging applications and reporting bugs to us so that we can provide you with the correct answer or fix as quickly as possible.

When you encounter a problem, there are a few general actions you can take:

**Review the Berkeley DB error output:**

If an error output mechanism has been configured in the Berkeley DB environment, additional run-time error messages are made available to the applications. If you are not using an environment, it is well worth modifying your application to create one so that you can get more detailed error messages. See [Run-time error information \(page 11\)](#) for more information on configuring Berkeley DB to output these error messages.

**Review the options available for the `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` method:**

Look to see if it offers any additional informational and/or debugging messages that might help you understand the problem.

**Add run-time diagnostics:**

You can configure and build Berkeley DB to perform run-time diagnostics. (By default, these checks are not done because they can seriously impact performance.) See [Compile-time configuration \(page 10\)](#) for more information.

**Apply all available patches:**

Before reporting a problem in Berkeley DB, please upgrade to the latest Berkeley DB release, if possible, or at least make sure you have applied any updates available for your release from the [Berkeley DB web site](#).

**Run the test suite:**

If you see repeated failures or failures of simple test cases, run the Berkeley DB test suite to determine whether the distribution of Berkeley DB you are using was built and configured correctly.

## Compile-time configuration

There are three compile-time configuration options that assist in debugging Berkeley DB and Berkeley DB applications:

**`--enable-debug`**

If you want to build Berkeley DB with `-g` as the C and C++ compiler flag, enter `--enable-debug` as an argument to `configure`. This will create Berkeley DB with debugging symbols, as well as load various Berkeley DB routines that can be called directly from a debugger to display database page content, cursor queues, and so forth. (Note that the `-O` optimization flag will still be specified. To compile with only the `-g`, explicitly set the `CFLAGS` environment variable before configuring.)

**--enable-diagnostic**

If you want to build Berkeley DB with debugging run-time sanity checks and with `DIAGNOSTIC #defined` during compilation, enter `--enable-diagnostic` as an argument to configure. This will cause a number of special checks to be performed when Berkeley DB is running. This flag should not be defined when configuring to build production binaries because it degrades performance.

**--enable-umrw**

When compiling Berkeley DB for use in run-time memory consistency checkers (in particular, programs that look for reads and writes of uninitialized memory), use `--enable-umrw` as an argument to configure. This guarantees, among other things, that Berkeley DB will completely initialize allocated pages rather than initializing only the minimum necessary amount.

## Run-time error information

Normally, when an error occurs in the Berkeley DB library, an integer value (either a Berkeley DB specific value or a system `errno` value) is returned by Berkeley DB. In some cases, however, this value may be insufficient to completely describe the cause of the error, especially during initial application debugging.

Most Berkeley DB errors will result in additional information being written to a standard file descriptor or output stream. Additionally, Berkeley DB can be configured to pass these verbose error messages to an application function. There are four methods intended to provide applications with additional error information: `DB_ENV->set_errcall()`, `DB_ENV->set_errfile()`, `DB_ENV->set_errpfx()` and `DB_ENV->set_verbose()`.

The Berkeley DB error-reporting facilities do not slow performance or significantly increase application size, and may be run during normal operation as well as during debugging. Where possible, we recommend these options always be configured and the output saved in the filesystem. We have found that this often saves time when debugging installation or other system-integration problems.

In addition, there are three methods to assist applications in displaying their own error messages: `db_strerror()`, `DB_ENV->err()`, and `DB_ENV->errx()`. The first is a superset of the ANSI C `strerror` function, and returns a descriptive string for any error return from the Berkeley DB library. The `DB_ENV->err()` and `DB_ENV->errx()` methods use the error message configuration options described previously to format and display error messages to appropriate output devices.

## Reviewing Berkeley DB log files

If you are running with transactions and logging, the `db_printlog` utility can be a useful debugging aid. The `db_printlog` utility will display the contents of your log files in a human readable (and machine-readable) format.

The `db_printlog` utility will attempt to display any and all log files present in a designated `db_home` directory. For each log record, the `db_printlog` utility will display a line of the form:

```
[22][28]db_big: rec: 43 txnid 80000963 prevlsn [21][10483281]
```

The opening numbers in square brackets are the *log sequence number (LSN)* of the log record being displayed. The first number indicates the log file in which the record appears, and the second number indicates the offset in that file of the record.

The first character string identifies the particular log operation being reported. The log records corresponding to particular operations are described following. The rest of the line consists of name/value pairs.

The rec field indicates the record type (this is used to dispatch records in the log to appropriate recovery functions).

The txnid field identifies the transaction for which this record was written. A txnid of 0 means that the record was written outside the context of any transaction. You will see these most frequently for checkpoints.

Finally, the prevlsn contains the LSN of the last record for this transaction. By following prevlsn fields, you can accumulate all the updates for a particular transaction. During normal abort processing, this field is used to quickly access all the records for a particular transaction.

After the initial line identifying the record type, each field of the log record is displayed, one item per line. There are several fields that appear in many different records and a few fields that appear only in some records.

The following table presents each currently written log record type with a brief description of the operation it describes. Any of these record types may have the string "\_debug" appended if they were written because DB\_TXN\_NOT\_DURABLE was specified and the system was configured with `--enable-diagnostic`.

Log Record Type	Description
bam_adj	Used when we insert/remove an index into/from the page header of a Btree page.
bam_cadjust	Keeps track of record counts in a Btree or Recno database.
bam_cdel	Used to mark a record on a page as deleted.
bam_curadj	Used to adjust a cursor location when a nearby record changes in a Btree database.
bam_merge	Used to merge two Btree database pages during compaction.
bam_pgno	Used to replace a page number in a Btree record.
bam_rcuradj	Used to adjust a cursor location when a nearby record changes in a Recno database.
bam_relink	Fix leaf page prev/next chain when a page is removed.
bam_repl	Describes a replace operation on a record.
bam_root	Describes an assignment of a root page.

Log Record Type	Description
bam_rsplit	Describes a reverse page split.
bam_split	Describes a page split.
crdel_inmem_create	Record the creation of an in-memory named database.
crdel_inmem_remove	Record the removal of an in-memory named database.
crdel_inmem_rename	Record the rename of an in-memory named database.
crdel metasub	Describes the creation of a metadata page for a subdatabase.
db_addrm	Add or remove an item from a page of duplicates.
db_big	Add an item to an overflow page ( <i>overflow pages</i> contain items too large to place on the main page)
db_cksum	Unable to checksum a page.
db_debug	Log debugging message.
db_noop	This marks an operation that did nothing but update the LSN on a page.
db_ovref	Increment or decrement the reference count for a big item.
db_pg_alloc	Indicates we allocated a page to a database.
db_pg_free	Indicates we freed a page (freed pages are added to a freelist and reused).
db_pg_freedata	Indicates we freed a page that still contained data entries (freed pages are added to a freelist and reused.)
db_pg_init	Indicates we reinitialized a page during a truncate.
db_pg_sort	Sort the free page list and free pages at the end of the file.
dbreg_register	Records an open of a file (mapping the filename to a log-id that is used in subsequent log operations).
fop_create	Create a file in the file system.
fop_file_remove	Remove a name in the file system.
fop_remove	Remove a file in the file system.
fop_rename	Rename a file in the file system.
fop_write	Write bytes to an object in the file system.

Log Record Type	Description
ham_chgpg	Used to adjust a cursor location when a Hash page is removed, and its elements are moved to a different Hash page.
ham_copypage	Used when we empty a bucket page, but there are overflow pages for the bucket; one needs to be copied back into the actual bucket.
ham_curadj	Used to adjust a cursor location when a nearby record changes in a Hash database.
ham_groupalloc	Allocate some number of contiguous pages to the Hash database.
ham_insdel	Insert/delete an item on a Hash page.
ham_metagroup	Update the metadata page to reflect the allocation of a sequence of contiguous pages.
ham_newpage	Adds or removes overflow pages from a Hash bucket.
ham_replace	Handle updates to records that are on the main page.
ham_splitdata	Record the page data for a split.
qam_add	Describes the actual addition of a new record to a Queue.
qam_del	Delete a record in a Queue.
qam_delect	Delete a record in a Queue with extents.
qam_incfirst	Increments the record number that refers to the first record in the database.
qam_mvptr	Indicates we changed the reference to either or both of the first and current records in the file.
txn_child	Commit a child transaction.
txn_ckp	Transaction checkpoint.
txn_recycle	Transaction IDs wrapped.
txn_regop	Logs a regular (non-child) transaction commit.
txn_xa_regop	Logs a prepare message.

## Augmenting the Log for Debugging

When debugging applications, it is sometimes useful to log not only the actual operations that modify pages, but also the underlying Berkeley DB functions being executed. This form of logging can add significant bulk to your log, but can permit debugging application errors that are almost impossible to find any other way. To turn on these log messages, specify the --

enable-debug\_rop and --enable-debug\_wop configuration options when configuring Berkeley DB. See [Configuring Berkeley DB \(page 33\)](#) for more information.

## Extracting Committed Transactions and Transaction Status

Sometimes, it is helpful to use the human-readable log output to determine which transactions committed and aborted. The awk script, `commit.awk`, (found in the `db_printlog` directory of the Berkeley DB distribution) allows you to do just that. The following command, where `log_output` is the output of `db_printlog`, will display a list of the transaction IDs of all committed transactions found in the log:

```
awk -f commit.awk log_output
```

If you need a complete list of both committed and aborted transactions, then the script `status.awk` will produce it. The syntax is as follows:

```
awk -f status.awk log_output
```

## Extracting Transaction Histories

Another useful debugging aid is to print out the complete history of a transaction. The awk script `txn.awk` allows you to do that. The following command line, where `log_output` is the output of the `db_printlog` utility and `txnlist` is a comma-separated list of transaction IDs, will display all log records associated with the designated transaction ids:

```
awk -f txn.awk TXN=txnlist log_output
```

## Extracting File Histories

The awk script `fileid.awk` allows you to extract all log records that refer to a designated file. The syntax for the `fileid.awk` script is the following, where `log_output` is the output of `db_printlog` and `fids` is a comma-separated list of fileids:

```
awk -f fileid.awk PGNO=fids log_output
```

## Extracting Page Histories

The awk script `pgno.awk` allows you to extract all log records that refer to designated page numbers. However, because this script will extract records with the designated page numbers for all files, it is most useful in conjunction with the `fileid` script. The syntax for the `pgno.awk` script is the following, where `log_output` is the output of `db_printlog` and `pgnolist` is a comma-separated list of page numbers:

```
awk -f pgno.awk PGNO=pgnolist log_output
```

## Other log processing tools

The awk script `count.awk` prints out the number of log records encountered that belonged to some transaction (that is, the number of log records excluding those for checkpoints and non-transaction-protected operations).

The script `range.awk` will extract a subset of a log. This is useful when the output of `db_printlog` utility is too large to be reasonably manipulated with an editor or other tool. The



syntax for range.awk is the following, where **sf** and **so** represent the LSN of the beginning of the sublog you want to extract, and **ef** and **eo** represent the LSN of the end of the sublog you want to extract:

```
awk -f range.awk START_FILE=sf START_OFFSET=so END_FILE=ef \  
END_OFFSET=eo log_output
```

---

## Chapter 4. Building Berkeley DB for Windows

This chapter contains general instructions on building Berkeley DB for specific windows platforms using specific compilers. The [Windows FAQ \(page 26\)](#) also contains helpful information.

The `build_windows` directory in the Berkeley DB distribution contains project files for Microsoft Visual Studio:

Project File	Description
Berkeley_DB.sln	Visual Studio 2005 (8.0) workspace
*.vcproj	Visual Studio 2005 (8.0) projects

These project files can be used to build Berkeley DB for the following platforms: Windows NT/2K/XP/2003/Vista, and 64-bit Windows XP/2003/Vista.

### Building Berkeley DB for 32 bit Windows

#### Visual C++ .NET 2008

1. Choose *File -> Open -> Project/Solution....* In the `build_windows` directory, select `Berkeley_DB.sln` and click Open.
2. The *Visual Studio Conversion Wizard* will open automatically. Click the *Finish* button.
3. On the next screen click the *Close* button.
4. Choose the desired project configuration from the drop-down menu on the tool bar (either Debug or Release).
5. Choose the desired platform configuration from the drop-down menu on the tool bar (usually Win32 or x64).
6. To build, right-click on the `Berkeley_DB` solution and select Build Solution.

#### Visual C++ .NET 2005

1. Choose *File -> Open -> Project/Solution....* In the `build_windows` directory, select `Berkeley_DB.sln` and click Open
2. Choose the desired project configuration from the drop-down menu on the tool bar (either Debug or Release).
3. Choose the desired platform configuration from the drop-down menu on the tool bar (usually Win32 or x64).
4. To build, right-click on the `Berkeley_DB` solution and select Build Solution.

## Build results

The results of your build will be placed in one of the following Berkeley DB subdirectories, depending on the configuration that you chose:

```
build_windows\Win32\Debug
build_windows\Win32\Release
build_windows\Win32\Debug_static
build_windows\Win32\Release_static
```

When building your application during development, you should normally use compile options "Debug Multithreaded DLL" and link against `build_windows\Debug\libdb50d.lib`. You can also build using a release version of the Berkeley DB libraries and tools, which will be placed in `build_windows\Win32\Release\libdb50.lib`. When linking against the release build, you should compile your code with the "Release Multithreaded DLL" compile option. You will also need to add the `build_windows` directory to the list of include directories of your application's project, or copy the Berkeley DB include files to another location.

## Building Berkeley DB for 64-bit Windows

The following procedure can be used to build natively on a 64-bit system or to cross-compile from a 32-bit system.

When building 64-bit binaries, the output directory will be one of the following Berkeley DB subdirectories, depending upon the configuration that you chose:

```
build_windows\x64\Debug
build_windows\x64\Release
build_windows\x64\Debug_static
build_windows\x64\Release_static
```

### x64 build with Visual Studio 2005 or newer

1. Follow the build instructions for your version of Visual Studio, as described in [Building Berkeley DB for 32 bit Windows \(page 17\)](#).
2. Select *x64* from the *Platform Configuration* dropdown.
3. Right click on *Solution 'Berkeley\_DB'* in the solution explorer, and select *Build Solution*

## Building Berkeley DB with Cygwin

To build Berkeley DB with Cygwin, follow the instructions in [Building for UNIX/POSIX \(page 32\)](#).

## Building the C++ API

C++ support is built automatically on Windows.

## Building the C++ STL API

In the project list of the Berkeley\_DB.sln solution, build the "db\_stl" project and "db\_stl\_static" project to build STL API as a dynamic or static library respectively. And in your application, you should link this library file as well as the Berkeley DB library file to your application. The STL API library file is by default always put at the same location as the Berkeley DB library file.

And you need to include the STL API header files in your application code. If you are using the Berkeley DB source tree, the header files are in <Berkeley DB Source Root >/stl directory; If you are using the pre-built installed version, these header files are in < Berkeley DB Installed Directory>/include, as well as the db.h and db\_cxx.h header files.

## Building the Java API

Java support is not built automatically. The following instructions assume that you have installed the Sun Java Development Kit in d:\java. Of course, if you installed elsewhere or have different Java software, you will need to adjust the pathnames accordingly.

1. Set your include directories. Choose *Tools -> Options -> Projects -> VC++ Directories*. Under the "Show directories for" pull-down, select "Include files". Add the full pathnames for the d:\java\include and d:\java\include\win32 directories. Then click OK. These are the directories needed when including jni.h.
2. Set the executable files directories. Choose *Tools -> Options -> Projects -> VC++ Directories*. Under the "Show directories for" pull-down, select "Executable files". Add the full pathname for the d:\java\bin directory, then click OK. This is the directory needed to find javac.
3. Set the build type to Release or Debug in the drop-down on the tool bar.
4. To build, right-click on db\_java and select Build. This builds the Java support library for Berkeley DB and compiles all the java files, placing the resulting db.jar and dbexamples.jar files in one of the following Berkeley DB subdirectories, depending on the configuration that you chose:

```
build_windows\Win32\Debug
build_windows\Win32\Release
```

## Building the C# API

The C# support is built by a separate Visual Studio solution, build\_windows\BDB\_dotnet.sln, and requires version 2.0 (or higher) of the .NET platform.

By default, the solution will build the native libraries, the managed assembly and all example programs. The NUnit tests need to be built explicitly because of their dependence upon the NUnit assembly. The native libraries will be placed in one of the following subdirectories, depending upon the chosen configuration:

```
build_windows\Win32\Debug
```

```
build_windows\Win32\Release  
build_windows\x64\Debug  
build_windows\x64\Release
```

The managed assembly and all C# example programs will be placed in one of the following subdirectories, depending upon the chosen configuration:

```
build_windows\AnyCPU\Debug  
build_windows\AnyCPU\Release
```

The native libraries need to be locatable by the .NET platform, meaning they must be copied into an application's directory, the Windows or System directory, or their location must be added to the PATH environment variable. The example programs demonstrate how to programmatically edit the PATH variable.

## Building the SQL API

SQL support is built as part of the default build on Windows. For information on the build instructions, see [Building Berkeley DB for Windows \(page 17\)](#).

The SQL library is built as `libdb_sql150.dll` in the Release mode or `libdb_sql150d.dll` in the Debug mode. An SQL command line interpreter called `db_sql_shell.exe` is also built.

## Binary Compatibility With SQLite

Both `libdb_sql150.dll` and `libdb_sql150d.dll` are compatible with `sqlite3.dll`. You can rename `libdb_sql150.dll` to `sqlite3.dll` and `db_sql_shell.exe` to `sqlite3.exe`, and use these applications as a replacement for the standard SQLite binaries with same names.

## Enabling Extensions

The Berkeley DB SQL API provides extensions such as full text search and R-Tree index. To enable these extensions, do the following:

1. Open the Berkeley DB solution in Visual Studio.
2. Specify `SQLITE_ENABLE_FTS3` or `SQLITE_ENABLE_RTREE` in *Preprocessor Definitions* of the `db_sql` project.
3. Re-build the `db_sql` project.

See the SQLite Documentation for more information on [full text search](#) and [R-Tree](#).

## Building the JDBC Driver

This section describes the steps to build the JDBC driver.

1. Configure your build environment. For information on how to configure to build Java applications, see [Building the Java API \(page 19\)](#).

2. Build the SQL project in Debug mode.
3. Open Visual Studio.
4. Select File->Add->Existing Project.
5. Select build\_windows/db\_sql\_jdbc.vcproj and add it to the Berkeley\_DB solution. This adds the *db\_sql\_jdbc* Visual Studio project to the Berkeley\_DB solution file.
6. Build the db\_sql\_jdbc project in Visual Studio.

You can test the build by entering the following commands from the db\build\_windows\Win32\Debug directory:

```
javac -cp ".;jdbc.jar" -d . ..\..\..\sql\jdbc\test3.java
java -cp ".;jdbc.jar" test3
```

## Building the ODBC Driver

This section describes the steps required to build the ODBC driver.

### Configuring Your System

To configure your system prior to building the ODBC driver, do the following:

1. Download and install the latest SQLite ODBC driver Windows installer package for [32 bit Windows](#) or [64 bit Windows](#).
2. Download and install the latest [Microsoft Data Access Components \(MDAC\) SDK](#). The MDAC SDK is only required for testing the installation.

### Building the Library

1. Build the SQL project in Release mode. See [Building the SQL API \(page 20\)](#).
2. Open Visual Studio.
3. Load the Berkeley\_DB solution file into Visual Studio.
4. Set the build target to *Release*
5. Build the solution.
6. Select File->Add->Existing Project.
7. Select build\_windows/db\_sql\_odbc.vcproj and add it to the Berkeley\_DB solution. This adds the *db\_sql\_odbc* Visual Studio project to the Berkeley\_DB solution file.
8. Build the db\_sql\_odbc project. This can be done by right-clicking the db\_sql\_odbc project in the project explorer panel, and selecting build.

The sqlite3odbc.dll, libdb\_sql150.dll and libdb50.dll files are now built.

## Installing the Library

Copy the dll files built in the *Building the Library* section to the Windows system folder.

The Windows system folder is different on different systems, but is often C:\WINDOWS\System32.

## Testing the ODBC Install

The steps to verify that the installed driver works are as follows:

1. Open the Unicode ODBCtest application. On Windows XP: windows start->Microsoft Data Access SDK 2.8->ODBCtest (Unicode, x86).
2. Select the Conn->Full Connect... menu item.
3. Select SQLite3 Datasource and click OK.
4. Select the Stmt->SQLExecDirect... menu item.
5. Enter CREATE TABLE t1(x); in the Statement text box and click OK.
6. Verify that no error messages were output to the error window.

## Building the Tcl API

Tcl support is not built automatically. See Loading Berkeley DB with Tcl for information on sites from which you can download Tcl and which Tcl versions are compatible with Berkeley DB. These notes assume that Tcl is installed as d:\tcl, but you can change that if you want.

The Tcl library must be built as the same build type as the Berkeley DB library (both Release or both Debug). We found that the binary release of Tcl can be used with the Release configuration of Berkeley DB, but you will need to build Tcl from sources for the Debug configuration. Before building Tcl, you will need to modify its makefile to make sure that you are building a debug version, including thread support. This is because the set of DLLs linked into the Tcl executable must match the corresponding set of DLLs used by Berkeley DB.

1. Set the include directories. Choose *Tools -> Options -> Projects -> VC++ Directories*. Under the "Show directories for" pull-down, select "Include files". Add the full pathname for d:\tcl\include, then click OK. This is the directory that contains tcl.h.
2. Set the library files directory. Choose *Tools -> Options -> Projects -> VC++ Directories*. Under the "Show directories for" pull-down, select "Library files". Add the full pathname for the d:\tcl\lib directory, then click OK. This is the directory needed to find tc184g.lib (or whatever the library is named in your distribution).
3. Set the build type to Release or Debug in the drop-down on the tool bar.
4. To build, right-click on db\_tcl and select Build. This builds the Tcl support library for Berkeley DB, placing the result into one of the following Berkeley DB subdirectories, depending upon the configuration that you chose:

```
build_windows\Win32\Debug\libdb_tcl150d.dll  
build_windows\Win32\Release\libdb_tcl150.dll
```

If you use a version different from Tcl 8.4.x you will need to change the name of the Tcl library used in the build (for example, `tcl184g.lib`) to the appropriate name. To do this, right click on `db_tcl`, go to *Properties -> Linker -> Input -> Additional dependencies* and change `tcl184g.lib` to match the Tcl version you are using.

## Distributing DLLs

When distributing applications linked against the DLL (not static) version of the library, the DLL files you need will be found in one of the following Berkeley DB subdirectories, depending upon the configuration that you chose:

```
build_windows\Win32\Debug  
build_windows\Win32\Release  
build_windows\Win32\Debug_static  
build_windows\Win32\Release_static  
build_windows\x64\Debug  
build_windows\x64\Release  
build_windows\x64\Debug_static  
build_windows\x64\Release_static
```

You may also need to redistribute DLL files needed for the compiler's runtime. Generally, these runtime DLL files can be installed in the same directory that will contain your installed Berkeley DB DLLs. This directory may need to be added to your System PATH environment variable. Check your compiler's license and documentation for specifics on redistributing runtime DLLs.

## Building a small memory footprint library

For applications that don't require all of the functionality of the full Berkeley DB library, an option is provided to build a static library with certain functionality disabled. In particular, cryptography, hash and queue access methods, replication and verification are all turned off. This can reduce the memory footprint of Berkeley DB significantly.

In general on Windows systems, you will want to evaluate the size of the final application, not the library build. The Microsoft LIB file format (like UNIX archives) includes copies of all of the object files and additional information. The linker rearranges symbols and strips out the overhead, and the resulting application is much smaller than the library. There is also a Visual C++ optimization to "Minimize size" that will reduce the library size by a few percent.

A Visual C++ project file called `db_small` is provided for this small memory configuration. During a build, static libraries are created in Release or Debug, respectively. The library name is `libdb_small148sd.lib` for the debug build, or `libdb_small148s.lib` for the release build.

For assistance in further reducing the size of the Berkeley DB library, or in building small memory footprint libraries on other systems, please contact Berkeley DB support.



## Running the test suite under Windows

To build the test suite on Windows platforms, you will need to configure Tcl support. You will also need sufficient main memory (at least 64MB), and disk (around 250MB of disk will be sufficient).

### Building the software needed by the tests

The test suite must be run against a Debug version of Berkeley DB, so you will need a Debug version of the Tcl libraries. This involves building Tcl from its source. See the Tcl sources for more information. Then build the Tcl API - see [Building the Tcl API \(page 22\)](#) for details.

### Visual Studio 2005 or newer

To build for testing, perform the following steps:

1. Open the Berkeley DB solution.
2. Ensure that the target configuration is Debug
3. Right click the *db\_tcl* project in the Solution Explorer, and select *Build*.
4. Right click the *db\_test* project in the Solution Explorer, and select *Build*.

## Running the test suite under Windows

Before running the tests for the first time, you must edit the file `include.tcl` in your build directory and change the line that reads:

```
set tclsh_path SET_YOUR_TCLSH_PATH
```

You will want to use the location of the `tclsh` program (be sure to include the name of the executable). For example, if Tcl is installed in `d:\tcl`, this line should be the following:

```
set tclsh_path d:\tcl\bin\tclsh84g.exe
```

If your path includes spaces be sure to enclose it in quotes:

```
set tclsh_path "c:\Program Files\tcl\bin\tclsh84g.exe"
```

Make sure that the path to Berkeley DB's tcl library is in your current path. On Windows NT/2000/XP, edit your PATH using the My Computer -> Properties -> Advanced -> Environment Variables dialog. On earlier versions of Windows, you may find it convenient to add a line to `c:\AUTOEXEC.BAT`:

```
SET PATH=%PATH%;c:\db\build_windows
```

Then, in a shell of your choice enter the following commands:

1. `cd build_windows`
2. `run d:\tcl\bin\tclsh84g.exe`, or the equivalent name of the Tcl shell for your system.

You should get a `"%"` prompt.

3. % source ../test/test.tcl  
If no errors occur, you should get a "%" prompt.

You are now ready to run tests in the test suite; see [Running the test suite](#) for more information.

## Building the software needed by the SQL tests

The SQL test suite must be run against a Debug version of Berkeley DB, so you need a Debug version of the Tcl libraries. This involves building Tcl from its source. See the [Tcl sources](#) for more information. Then build the Tcl API - see [Building the Tcl API \(page 22\)](#) for details.

Before building for SQL tests, build the `db_tcl` and `db_sql_testfixture` projects. This requires Tcl 8.4 or above. If you are using a later version of Tcl, edit the Tcl library that `db_tcl` and `db_sql_testfixture` link to.

To do this right click the `db_tcl/db_sql_testfixture` project, select *Properties->Configuration Properties->Linker->Input->Additional Dependencies* and edit the Tcl library, `tcl84g.lib`, to match the version you are using.

Building the `db_sql_testfixture` project builds the `testfixture.exe` program in `../build_windows/Win32/Debug`. It also builds the projects `db` and `db_sql`, on which it depends.

## Visual Studio 2005 or newer

To build for testing, perform the following steps:

1. Open the Berkeley DB solution.
2. Ensure that the target configuration is Debug.
3. Right click the `db_tcl` project in the Solution Explorer, and select *Build*.
4. Right click the `db_sql_testfixture` project in the Solution Explorer, and select *Build*.

To test extensions, specify the following in the *Preprocessor Definitions* of the `db_sql_testfixture` project:

- `SQLITE_ENABLE_FTS3` to enable the full text search layer
- `SQLITE_ENABLE_RTREE` to enable the R-Tree layer

## Windows notes

If a system memory environment is closed by all processes, subsequent attempts to open it will return an error. To successfully open a transactional environment in this state, recovery must be run by the next process to open the environment. For non-transactional environments, applications should remove the existing environment and then create a new database environment.

1. Berkeley DB does not support the Windows/95, Windows/98 or Windows/ME platforms.

2. On Windows, system paging file memory is freed on last close. For this reason, multiple processes sharing a database environment created using the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` flag must arrange for at least one process to always have the environment open, or alternatively that any process joining the environment be prepared to re-create it.
3. When using the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` flag, Berkeley DB shared regions are created without ACLs, which means that the regions are only accessible to a single user. If wider sharing is appropriate (for example, both user applications and Windows/NT service applications need to access the Berkeley DB regions), the Berkeley DB code will need to be modified to create the shared regions with the correct ACLs. Alternatively, by not specifying the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` flag, filesystem-backed regions will be created instead, and the permissions on those files may be directly specified through the `DB_ENV->open()` method.
4. Applications that operate on wide character strings can use the Windows function `WideCharToMultiByte` with the code page `CP_UTF8` to convert paths to the form expected by Berkeley DB. Internally, Berkeley DB calls `MultiByteToWideChar` on paths before calling Windows functions.
5. Various Berkeley DB methods take a **mode** argument, which is intended to specify the underlying file permissions for created files. Berkeley DB currently ignores this argument on Windows systems.

It would be possible to construct a set of security attributes to pass to `CreateFile` that accurately represents the mode. In the worst case, this would involve looking up user and all group names, and creating an entry for each. Alternatively, we could call the `_chmod` (partial emulation) function after file creation, although this leaves us with an obvious race.

Practically speaking, however, these efforts would be largely meaningless on a FAT file system, which only has a "readable" and "writable" flag, applying to all users.

## Windows FAQ

1. **My Win\* C/C++ application crashes in the Berkeley DB library when Berkeley DB calls `fprintf` (or some other standard C library function).**

You should be using the "Debug Multithreaded DLL" compiler option in your application when you link with the `build_windows\Debug\libdb48d.lib` library (this `.lib` file is actually a stub for `libdb48d.DLL`). To check this setting in Visual C++, choose the *Project/Settings* menu item and select *Code Generation* under the tab marked *C/C++*; and see the box marked *Use runtime library*. This should be set to *Debug Multithreaded DLL*. If your application is linked against the static library, `build_windows\Debug\libdb48sd.lib`; then, you will want to set *Use runtime library* to *Debug Multithreaded*.

Setting this option incorrectly can cause multiple versions of the standard libraries to be linked into your application (one on behalf of your application, and one on behalf of the Berkeley DB library). That violates assumptions made by these libraries, and traps can result.

2. **Why are the build options for `DB_DLL` marked as "Use MFC in a Shared DLL"? Does Berkeley DB use MFC?**

Berkeley DB does not use MFC at all. It does however, call malloc and free and other facilities provided by the Microsoft C runtime library. We found in our work that many applications and libraries are built assuming MFC, and specifying this for Berkeley DB solves various interoperation issues, and guarantees that the right runtime libraries are selected. Note that because we do not use MFC facilities, the MFC library DLL is not marked as a dependency for libdb.dll, but the appropriate Microsoft C runtime is.

### 3. How can I build Berkeley DB for [MinGW](#)?

Follow the instructions in [Building for UNIX/POSIX \(page 32\)](#), and specify the `--enable-mingw` option to the configuration script. This configuration option currently only builds static versions of the library, it does not yet build a DLL version of the library, and file sizes are limited to 2GB ( $2^{32}$  bytes.)

### 4. How can I build a Berkeley DB for Windows 98/ME?

Windows 98/ME is no longer supported by Berkeley DB. The following is therefore only of interest to historical users of Berkeley DB.

By default on Windows, Berkeley DB supports internationalized filenames by treating all directory paths and filenames passed to Berkeley DB methods as UTF-8 encoded strings. All paths are internally converted to wide character strings and passed to the wide character variants of Windows system calls.

This allows applications to create and open databases with names that cannot be represented with ASCII names while maintaining compatibility with applications that work purely with ASCII paths.

Windows 98 and ME do not support Unicode paths directly. To build for those versions of Windows, either:

- Follow the instructions at [Microsoft's web site](#).
- Open the workspace or solution file with Visual Studio. Then open the Project properties/settings section for the project you need to build (at least db\_dll). In the *C/C++->Preprocessor->Preprocessor Definitions* section, remove `_UNICODE` and `UNICODE` entries. Add in an entry of `_MBCS`. Build the project as normal.

The ASCII builds will also work on Windows NT/2K/XP and 2003, but will not translate paths to wide character strings.

---

# Chapter 5. Building Berkeley DB for Windows Mobile

## Building for Windows Mobile

This page contains general instructions on building Berkeley DB for Windows Mobile platforms using specific compilers.

The `build_wince` directory in the Berkeley DB distribution contains project files for Microsoft Visual 2005 with the Mobile SDK installed:

Project File	Description
Berkeley_DB.sln	Visual Studio 2005 solution
*.vcproj	Visual Studio 2005 project files

These project files can be used to build Berkeley DB for the Windows Mobile platform.

## Building Berkeley DB for Windows Mobile

### Visual Studio 2005

1. Choose *File -> Open Workspace...* Navigate to the `build_wince` directory, select `Berkeley_DB` and click Open.
2. Select the desired target platform from the platform drop-down menu.
3. Build the desired projects.

### Build results

The results of your build will be placed in a subdirectory of `build_windows` named after the configuration you chose (for examples, `build_wince\Debug_PocketPC2003_ARMV4`

When building your application during development, you should normally link against `libdb_small150sd.lib`. You can also build using a release version of the Berkeley DB libraries and tools, which will be placed in `build_windows\Release\libdb_small150s.lib`. You will also need to add the `build_wince` directory to the list of include directories of your application's project, or copy the Berkeley DB include files to a location in your Visual Studio include path.

## Changing Build Configuration Type

This section contains information on how to change between a dynamic library (.dll) and static library (.lib). The library projects and their default output and configuration in the Release build is as follows:

Project	Default Output	Default Configuration
<code>db_small_static</code>	<code>libdb_small150s.lib</code>	Static Library
<code>db_static</code>	<code>libdb50s.lib</code>	Static Library

Project	Default Output	Default Configuration
db_sql	libdb_sql50.dll	Dynamic Library

To change a project configuration type in Visual Studio 2005, select a project and do the following:

1. Choose *Project->Properties* and navigate to Configuration Properties.
2. Under Project Defaults, change the Configuration Type to your desired type.

Note: After this change, the output file names change to the Visual Studio 2005 defaults based on the project name.

## Building Berkeley DB for different target platforms

There are many possible target CPU architectures for a Windows Mobile application. This section outlines the process required to add a new target architecture to the project files supplied with Berkeley DB.

The Visual Studio 2005 project files will by default build for Pocket PC 2003 (ARMV4) and Smartphone 2003 (ARMV4). If you want to build for other platforms such as Windows Mobile 6.0 or Windows Mobile 6.0 Professional, you need to follow the steps provided in this section.

Different target architectures are available in different Platform SDK downloads from Microsoft. The appropriate SDK must be installed for your mobile architecture before you can build for that platform.

### Visual Studio 2005

1. Choose *File -> Open Workspace....* Navigate to the build\_wince directory, select Berkeley\_DB and click Open.
2. From the Solution explorer window, right-click the Solution Berkeley\_DB and select Configuration manager...
3. In the Active solution platform: drop down box select New...
4. From the Type or select the new platform drop-down box, select a configuration from the ones available and click OK.
5. Click Close from the Configuration Manager dialog box.
6. The target platform drop-down now contains the platform just added.
7. Build as per the instructions given at the beginning of this chapter.

## Windows Mobile notes

1. The C++ API is not supported on Windows Mobile. The file stream and exception handling functionality provided by the Berkeley DB C++ API are not supported by Windows Mobile. It is possible to build a C++ application against the Berkeley DB C API.
2. The Java API is not currently supported on Windows Mobile.

3. Tcl support is not currently supported on Windows Mobile.
4. Berkeley DB is shipped with support for the Pocket PC 2003 and Smartphone 2003 target platforms. It is possible to build Berkeley DB for different target platforms using Visual Studio's Configuration Manager. This can be done using the following steps:
  - a. Open Visual Studio, and load the build\_wince/Berkeley\_DB.sln solution file.
  - b. Select the *Build->Configuration Manager...* menu item.
  - c. In the *Active Solution Platform...* dropdown, select *New...*
  - d. Select the desired target platform (you must have the desired Microsoft Platform SDK installed for it to appear in the list). Choose to copy settings from either the Pocket PC 2003 or Smartphone 2003 platforms.

Before building the wce\_tpcb sample application for the new platform, you will need to complete the following steps:

- a. Open the project properties page for wce\_tpcb. Do this by: Right click *wce\_tpcb* in the *Solution Explorer* then select *Properties*
- b. Select *Configuration Properties->Linker->Input*
- c. Remove *secchk.lib* and *crtti.lib* from the *Additional Dependencies* field.

NOTE: These steps are based on Visual Studio 2005, and might vary slightly depending on which version of Visual Studio being used.

## Windows Mobile FAQ

1. **What if my Windows Mobile device does not support SetFilePointer and/or SetEndOfFile?**

You can manually disable the truncate functionality from the build.

Do that by opening the db-X.X.X/build\_wince/db\_config.h file, and change the line that reads

```
#define HAVE_FTRUNCATE 1
```

to read

```
#undef HAVE_FTRUNCATE
```

Making this change disables DB->compact() for btree databases.

2. **Why doesn't automatic log archiving work?**

The Windows Mobile platform does not have a concept of a working directory. This means that the DB\_ARCH\_REMOVE and DB\_ARCH\_ABS flags do not work properly within Windows Mobile, because they rely on having a working directory.

To work around this issue, you can call `log_archive` with the `DB_ARCH_LOG` flag, the list of returned file handles will not contain absolute paths. Your application can take this list of files, construct absolute paths, and delete the files.

**3. Does Berkeley DB support Windows Mobile?**

Yes.

Berkeley DB relies on a subset of the Windows API, and some standard C library APIs. These are provided by Windows CE. Windows Mobile is built "on top" of Windows CE.

**4. Does Berkeley DB support Windows CE?**

Yes.

Berkeley DB relies on a subset of the Windows API, and some standard C library APIs. These are provided by Windows CE.

**5. What platforms are the supplied sample applications designed for?**

The supplied sample applications were developed for the Pocket PC 2003 emulator. They are known to work on real pocket PC devices and later versions of the emulator as well.

The supplied applications are not designed to work with Smartphone devices. The screen size and input mechanisms are not compatible.

**6. I see a file mapping error when opening a Berkeley DB environment or database. What is wrong?**

The default behavior of Berkeley DB is to use memory mapped files in the environment. Windows Mobile does not allow memory mapped files to be created on flash storage.

There are two workarounds:

- a. Configure the Berkeley DB environment not to use memory mapped files. The options are discussed in detail in Shared memory region.
- b. Create the Berkeley DB environment on non-flash storage. It is possible to store database and log files in a different location to using the `DB_ENV->set_data_dir()` and `DB_ENV->set_lg_dir()` APIs.



---

# Chapter 6. Building Berkeley DB for UNIX/POSIX

## Building for UNIX/POSIX

The Berkeley DB distribution builds up to four separate libraries: the base C API Berkeley DB library and the optional C++, Java, and Tcl API libraries. For portability reasons, each library is standalone and contains the full Berkeley DB support necessary to build applications; that is, the C++ API Berkeley DB library does not require any other Berkeley DB libraries to build and run C++ applications.

Building for Linux, Mac OS X and the QNX Neutrino release is the same as building for a conventional UNIX platform.

The Berkeley DB distribution uses the Free Software Foundation's [autoconf](#) and [libtool](#) tools to build on UNIX platforms. In general, the standard configuration and installation options for these tools apply to the Berkeley DB distribution.

To perform a standard UNIX build of Berkeley DB, change to the `build_unix` directory and then enter the following two commands:

```
../dist/configure  
make
```

This will build the Berkeley DB library.

To install the Berkeley DB library, enter the following command:

```
make install
```

To rebuild Berkeley DB, enter:

```
make clean  
make
```

If you change your mind about how Berkeley DB is to be configured, you must start from scratch by entering the following command:

```
make realclean  
../dist/configure  
make
```

To uninstall Berkeley DB, enter:

```
make uninstall
```

To build multiple UNIX versions of Berkeley DB in the same source tree, create a new directory at the same level as the `build_unix` directory, and then configure and build in that directory as described previously.

## Building the Berkeley DB SQL Interface

To perform a standard UNIX build of the Berkeley DB SQL interface, go to the `build_unix` directory and then enter the following two commands:

```
../dist/configure --enable-sql  
make
```

This creates a library, `libdb_sql`, and a command line tool, `dbsql`. You can create and manipulate SQL databases using the `dbsql` shell.

You can optionally provide the `--enable-sql_compat` argument to the `configure` script. In addition to creating `libdb_sql` and `dbsql` this causes a thin wrapper library called `libsqlite3` and a command line tool called `sqlite3` to be built. This library can be used as a drop-in replacement for SQLite. The `sqlite3` command line tool is identical to the `dbsql` executable but is named so that existing scripts for SQLite can easily work with Berkeley DB.

```
../dist/configure --enable-sql_compat  
make
```

There are several arguments you can specify when configuring the Berkeley DB SQL Interface. See [Configuring the SQL Interface \(page 38\)](#) for more information.

## Configuring Berkeley DB

There are several arguments you can specify when configuring Berkeley DB. Although only the Berkeley DB-specific ones are described here, most of the standard GNU autoconf arguments are available and supported. To see a complete list of possible arguments, specify the `--help` flag to the `configure` program.

The Berkeley DB specific arguments are as follows:

- **--disable-largefile**

Some systems, notably versions of HP/UX and Solaris, require special compile-time options in order to create files larger than  $2^{32}$  bytes. These options are automatically enabled when Berkeley DB is compiled. For this reason, binaries built on current versions of these systems may not run on earlier versions of the system because the library and system calls necessary for large files are not available. To disable building with these compile-time options, enter `--disable-largefile` as an argument to `configure`.

- **--disable-shared, --disable-static**

On systems supporting shared libraries, Berkeley DB builds both static and shared libraries by default. (Shared libraries are built using [the GNU Project's Libtool](#) distribution, which supports shared library builds on many (although not all) systems.) To not build shared libraries, `configure` using the `--disable-shared` argument. To not build static libraries, `configure` using the `--disable-static` argument.

- **--enable-compat185**

To compile or load Berkeley DB 1.85 applications against this release of the Berkeley DB library, enter `--enable-compat185` as an argument to `configure`. This will include Berkeley DB 1.85 API compatibility code in the library.

- **--enable-cxx**

To build the Berkeley DB C++ API, enter `--enable-cxx` as an argument to configure.

- **--enable-debug**

To build Berkeley DB with `-g` as a compiler flag and with `DEBUG` #defined during compilation, enter `--enable-debug` as an argument to configure. This will create a Berkeley DB library and utilities with debugging symbols, as well as load various routines that can be called from a debugger to display pages, cursor queues, and so forth. If installed, the utilities will not be stripped. This argument should not be specified when configuring to build production binaries.

- **--enable-debug\_rop**

To build Berkeley DB to output log records for read operations, enter `--enable-debug_rop` as an argument to configure. This argument should not be specified when configuring to build production binaries.

- **--enable-debug\_wop**

To build Berkeley DB to output log records for write operations, enter `--enable-debug_wop` as an argument to configure. This argument should not be specified when configuring to build production binaries.

- **--enable-diagnostic**

To build Berkeley DB with run-time debugging checks, enter `--enable-diagnostic` as an argument to configure. This causes a number of additional checks to be performed when Berkeley DB is running, and also causes some failures to trigger process abort rather than returning errors to the application. Applications built using this argument should not share database environments with applications built without this argument. This argument should not be specified when configuring to build production binaries.

- **--enable-dump185**

To convert Berkeley DB 1.85 (or earlier) databases to this release of Berkeley DB, enter `--enable-dump185` as an argument to configure. This will build the `db_dump185` utility, which can dump Berkeley DB 1.85 and 1.86 databases in a format readable by the Berkeley DB `db_load` utility.

The system libraries with which you are loading the `db_dump185` utility must already contain the Berkeley DB 1.85 library routines for this to work because the Berkeley DB distribution does not include them. If you are using a non-standard library for the Berkeley DB 1.85 library routines, you will have to change the Makefile that the configuration step creates to load the `db_dump185` utility with that library.

- **--enable-java**

To build the Berkeley DB Java API, enter `--enable-java` as an argument to configure. To build Java, you must also build with shared libraries. Before configuring, you must set your `PATH` environment variable to include `javac`. Note that it is not sufficient to include a symbolic link to `javac` in your `PATH` because the configuration process uses the location of `javac` to

determine the location of the Java include files (for example, jni.h). On some systems, additional include directories may be needed to process jni.h; see [Changing compile or load options \(page 42\)](#) for more information.

- **--enable-posixmutexes**

To force Berkeley DB to use the POSIX pthread mutex interfaces for underlying mutex support, enter `--enable-posixmutexes` as an argument to configure. This is rarely necessary: POSIX mutexes will be selected automatically on systems where they are the preferred implementation.

The `--enable-posixmutexes` configuration argument is normally used in two ways: First, when there are multiple mutex implementations available and the POSIX mutex implementation is not the preferred one (for example, on Solaris where the LWP mutexes are used by default). Second, by default the Berkeley DB library will only select the POSIX mutex implementation if it supports mutexes shared between multiple processes, as described for the `pthread_condattr_setpshared` and `pthread_mutexattr_setpshared` interfaces. The `--enable-posixmutexes` configuration argument can be used to force the selection of POSIX mutexes in this case, which can improve application performance significantly when the alternative mutex implementation is a non-blocking one (for example test-and-set assembly instructions). However, configuring to use POSIX mutexes when the implementation does not have inter-process support will only allow the creation of private database environments, that is, environments where the `DB_PRIVATE` flag is specified to the `DB_ENV->open()` method.

Specifying the `--enable-posixmutexes` configuration argument may require that applications and Berkeley DB be linked with the `-lpthread` library.

- **--enable-pthread\_api**

To configure Berkeley DB for a POSIX pthreads application (with the exception that POSIX pthread mutexes may not be selected as the underlying mutex implementation for the build), enter `--enable-pthread_api` as an argument to configure. The build will include the Berkeley DB replication manager interfaces and will use the POSIX standard `pthread_self` and `pthread_yield` functions to identify threads of control and yield the processor. The `--enable-pthread_api` argument requires POSIX pthread support already be installed on your system.

Specifying the `--enable-pthread_api` configuration argument may require that applications and Berkeley DB be linked with the `-lpthread` library.

- **--enable-sql**

To build the command tool `dbsql`, enter `--enable-sql` as an argument to configure. The `dbsql` utility provides access to the Berkeley DB SQL interface. See [Configuring the SQL Interface \(page 38\)](#) for more information.

- **--enable-sql\_compat**

To build the command tool `sqlite3`, enter `--enable-sql_compat` as an argument to configure. `Sqlite3` is a command line tool that enables you to manually enter and execute SQL

commands. It is identical to the `db_sql` executable but named so that existing scripts for SQLite can easily work with Berkeley DB. See [Configuring the SQL Interface \(page 38\)](#) for more information.

- **--enable-sql\_codegen**

To build the command line tool `db_sql_codegen`, enter `--enable-sql_codegen` as an argument to configure. The `db_sql_codegen` utility translates a schema description written in a SQL Data Definition Language dialect into C code that implements the schema using Berkeley DB.

- **--enable-smallbuild**

To build a small memory footprint version of the Berkeley DB library, enter `--enable-smallbuild` as an argument to configure. The `--enable-smallbuild` argument is equivalent to individually specifying `--with-cryptography=no`, `--disable-hash`, `--disable-queue`, `--disable-replication`, `--disable-statistics` and `--disable-verify`, turning off cryptography support, the Hash and Queue access methods, database environment replication support and database and log verification support. See [Building a small memory footprint library \(page 41\)](#) for more information.

- **--enable-stl**

To build the Berkeley DB C++ STL API, enter `--enable-stl` as an argument to configure. Setting this argument implies that `--enable-cxx` is set, and the Berkeley DB C++ API will be built too.

There will be a `libdb_stl-X.X.a` and `libdb_stl-X.X.so` built, which are the static and shared library you should link your application with in order to make use of Berkeley DB via its STL API.

If your compiler is not ISO C++ compliant, the configure may fail with this argument specified because the STL API requires standard C++ template features. In this case, you will need a standard C++ compiler. So far gcc is the best choice, we have tested and found that gcc-3.4.4 and all its newer versions can build the Berkeley DB C++ STL API successfully.

And you need to include the STL API header files in your application code. If you are using the Berkeley DB source tree, the header files are in `<Berkeley DB Source Root >/stl` directory; If you are using the installed version, these header files are in `< Berkeley DB Installed Directory >/include`, as well as the `db.h` and `db_cxx.h` header files.

- **--enable-tcl**

To build the Berkeley DB Tcl API, enter `--enable-tcl` as an argument to configure. This configuration argument expects to find Tcl's `tclConfig.sh` file in the `/usr/local/lib` directory. See the `--with-tcl` argument for instructions on specifying a non-standard location for the Tcl installation. See [Loading Berkeley DB with Tcl](#) for information on sites from which you can download Tcl and which Tcl versions are compatible with Berkeley DB. To build Tcl, you must also build with shared libraries.

- **--enable-test**

To build the Berkeley DB test suite, enter `--enable-test` as an argument to `configure`. To run the Berkeley DB test suite, you must also build the Tcl API. This argument should not be specified when configuring to build production binaries.

- **--enable-uimutexes**

To force Berkeley DB to use the UNIX International (UI) mutex interfaces for underlying mutex support, enter `--enable-uimutexes` as an argument to `configure`. This is rarely necessary: UI mutexes will be selected automatically on systems where they are the preferred implementation.

The `--enable-uimutexes` configuration argument is normally used when there are multiple mutex implementations available and the UI mutex implementation is not the preferred one (for example, on Solaris where the LWP mutexes are used by default).

Specifying the `--enable-uimutexes` configuration argument may require that applications and Berkeley DB be linked with the `-lthread` library.

- **--enable-umrw**

Rational Software's Purify product and other run-time tools complain about uninitialized reads/writes of structure fields whose only purpose is padding, as well as when heap memory that was never initialized is written to disk. Specify the `--enable-umrw` argument during configuration to mask these errors. This argument should not be specified when configuring to build production binaries.

- **--with-cryptography**

To build Berkeley DB with support for cryptography, enter `--with-cryptography=yes` as an argument to `configure`.

To build Berkeley DB without support for cryptography, enter `--with-cryptography=no` as an argument to `configure`.

To build Berkeley DB with support for cryptography using Intel's Performance Primitive (IPP) library, enter `--with-cryptography=ipp` as an argument to `configure`. Additionally, set the following arguments:

`-L/path/to/ipp/sharedlib` to `LDFLAGS`

`-I/path/to/ipp/include` to `CPPFLAGS`

`-lippcpem64t -lpthread` to `LIBS`

An example configuration command for IPP encryption is as follows:

```
../dist/configure --with-cryptography=ipp
CPPFLAGS="-I/opt/intel/ipp/6.1.3.055/em64t/include"
LDFLAGS="-L/opt/intel/ipp/6.1.3.055/em64t/sharedlib"
LIBS="-lippcpem64t -lpthread"
```

See the [Intel Documentation](#) for specific instructions on configuring environment variables.

Note: The `--with-cryptography=ipp` argument works only on Linux.

- **--with-mutex=MUTEX**

To force Berkeley DB to use a specific mutex implementation, configure with `--with-mutex=MUTEX`, where `MUTEX` is the mutex implementation you want. For example, `--with-mutex=x86/gcc-assembly` will configure Berkeley DB to use the x86 GNU gcc compiler based test-and-set assembly mutexes. This is rarely necessary and should be done only when the default configuration selects the wrong mutex implementation. A list of available mutex implementations can be found in the distribution file `dist/aclocal/mutex.m4`.

- **--with-tcl=DIR**

To build the Berkeley DB Tcl API, enter `--with-tcl=DIR`, replacing `DIR` with the directory in which the Tcl `tclConfig.sh` file may be found. See Loading Berkeley DB with Tcl for information on sites from which you can download Tcl and which Tcl versions are compatible with Berkeley DB. To build Tcl, you must also build with shared libraries.

- **--with-uniqueprefix=NAME**

To build Berkeley DB with unique symbol names (in order to avoid conflicts with other application modules or libraries), enter `--with-uniqueprefix=NAME`, replacing `NAME` with a string that to be appended to every Berkeley DB symbol. If `"=NAME"` is not specified, a default value of `"_MAJORMINOR"` is used, where `MAJORMINOR` is the major and minor release numbers of the Berkeley DB release. See [Building with multiple versions of Berkeley DB \(page 8\)](#) for more information.

## Configuring the SQL Interface

There are a set of configuration options to assist you in building the Berkeley DB SQL interface. These configuration options include:

To build the command line interpreter `dbsql`, enter `--enable-sql` as an argument to configure. Along with `dbsql`, this argument also builds the `libdb_sqlXX.{so|la}` library, a C API library that mirrors the SQLite C API.

To build the command line tool `sqlite3`, enter `--enable-sql_compat` as an argument to configure. `sqlite3` enables you to manually enter and execute SQL commands. The `sqlite3` command line tool is identical to the `dbsql` executable but named so that existing scripts for SQLite can easily work with Berkeley DB. Along with `sqlite3`, this argument also builds `libsqlite3.{so|la}`, a C API library. `libsqlite3.{so|la}` mirrors the SQLite C API, and has the same name as the library generated by an SQLite build also for ease of use with existing scripts. In addition to building `sqlite3` and `libsqlite3.{so|la}`, the `--enable-sql_compat` argument also builds a `libdb_sqlXX.{so|la}` and `dbsql`, as is done with the `--enable-sql` argument.

To build the Berkeley DB SQL interface test suite, enter `--enable-test` as an argument to configure. This argument can also be used with either `--enable-sql` or `--enable-sql_compat` to build the SQLite Tcl test runner.

The following configuration options are useful when debugging applications:

To build Berkeley DB SQL interface with symbols for debugging enter `--enable-debug` as an argument to configure.

To build Berkeley DB SQL interface with run-time debugging checks, enter `--enable-diagnostic` as an argument to configure.

Any arguments that you can provide to the standard SQLite configure script can also be supplied when configuring Berkeley DB SQL interface.

## Enabling Extensions

The Berkeley DB SQL API provides extensions such as full text search and R-Tree index. By default, these two extensions are disabled. To enable an extension in the Berkeley DB SQL interface, specify the related option as an argument to the configure script using the standard environment variable, CPPFLAGS.

To enable building the full text search layer in the Berkeley DB interface, add the `SQLITE_ENABLE_FTS3` option to the CPPFLAGS variable.

To enable building the R-Tree layer in the Berkeley DB interface, add the `SQLITE_ENABLE_RTREE` option to the CPPFLAGS variable.

See the SQLite Documentation for more information on [full text search](#) and [R-Tree](#).

## Building the JDBC Driver

This section describes how to build the JDBC driver code using autoconf, which is the only method supported and tested by the Berkeley DB team.

To build the JDBC driver, you must have Sun Java Development Kit 1.1 or above installed.

```
cd build_unix
CFLAGS="-fPIC" ../dist/configure --enable-sql_compat --disable-shared
make
cd ../sql/jdbc
CFLAGS="-DHAVE_SQLITE3_MALLOC -DHAVE_ERRNO_H \
-I../build_unix -I../dbinc" \
LDFLAGS="../build_unix/libdb-5.0.a" \
./configure --with-sqlite3=../generated
make
```

Note: The defined process is known to generate a link warning during the final step. The warning is generated by libtool when linking a library without a library information file present (.la). It is safe to ignore the warning. If you have problems when using the JDBC driver, use the shared library version of Berkeley DB.

You can test the build by entering the following commands from the `sql/jdbc` directory:

```
javac -classpath ./sqlite.jar test3.java
```



```
java -Djava.library.path=./libs -classpath ./sqlite.jar:. test3
```

## Building the ODBC Driver

This section describes the steps required to build the ODBC driver.

### Configuring Your System

To configure your system prior to building the ODBC driver, do the following:

1. Download and install the latest [unixODBC](#) if ODBC is not already installed on your system.
2. Configure the ODBC server to work with SQLite databases. Follow [these instructions](#) from Christian Werner.

### Building the Library

To build the library, do the following

```
$ cd db-5.0.XX/build_unix
$ CFLAGS="-fPIC" ../dist/configure --enable-sql_compat --disable-shared
$ make
$ cd ../sql/odbc
$ CFLAGS="-DHAVE_ERRNO_H -I../build_unix -I../dbinc \
-I../sqlite/src" LDFLAGS="../build_unix/libdb-5.0.a" \
./configure --with-sqlite3=../generated
$ make
```

The `libsqlite3odbc.so` library containing a statically linked version of Berkeley DB SQL is now built.

NOTE: The final make command above is known to generate a warning when using GCC. The warning states: `Warning: Linking the shared library libsqlite3odbc.la against the static library ../build_unix/libdb-5.0.a is not portable!`. It is generally safe to ignore the warning when using the generated library.

### Testing the ODBC Driver

The steps to verify that the installed driver works are as follows:

1. Alter the `/etc/odbcinst.ini` and `~/odbc.ini` configuration files to refer to the `libsqlite3odbc.so` file built above.
2. Create a data source, and launch a data source viewer application by doing the following:

```
$ mkdir ~/databases
$ cd ~/databases
$ /path/to/Berkeley DB/build_unix/sqlite3 mytest.db
dbsql> CREATE TABLE t1(x);
```

```
dbsql> .quit;  
$ DataManager
```

The final step opens a GUI application that displays ODBC data sources on a system. You should be able to find the `mytest.db` data source just created.

## Building a small memory footprint library

There are a set of configuration options to assist you in building a small memory footprint library. These configuration options turn off specific functionality in the Berkeley DB library, reducing the code size. These configuration options include:

To build Berkeley DB without support for cryptography, enter `--with-cryptography=no` as an argument to configure.

To build Berkeley DB without support for the Hash access method, enter `--disable-hash` as an argument to configure.

To build Berkeley DB without support for the Queue access method, enter `--disable-queue` as an argument to configure.

To build Berkeley DB without support for the database environment replication, enter `--disable-replication` as an argument to configure.

To build Berkeley DB without support for the statistics interfaces, enter `--disable-statistics` as an argument to configure.

To build Berkeley DB without support for database verification, enter `--disable-verify` as an argument to configure.

Equivalent to individually specifying `--with-cryptography=no`, `--disable-hash`, `--disable-queue`, `--disable-replication`, `--disable-statistics` and `--disable-verify`. In addition, when compiling building with the GNU gcc compiler, the `--enable-smallbuild` option uses the `-Os` compiler build flag instead of the default `-O3`.

Note: `--disable-cryptography` and `--enable-cryptography` are deprecated in the Berkeley DB 11gR2 release. `--with-cryptography=no` does the same as `--disable-cryptography` and `--with-cryptography=yes` does the same as `--enable-cryptography` now.

The following configuration options will increase the size of the Berkeley DB library dramatically and are only useful when debugging applications:

### `--enable-debug`

Build Berkeley DB with symbols for debugging.

### `--enable-debug_rop`

Build Berkeley DB with read-operation logging.

### `--enable-debug_wop`

Build Berkeley DB with write-operation logging.

### `--enable-diagnostic`

Build Berkeley DB with run-time debugging checks.

In addition, static libraries are usually smaller than shared libraries. By default Berkeley DB will build both shared and static libraries. To build only a static library, configure Berkeley DB with the [Configuring Berkeley DB \(page 33\)](#) option.

The size of the Berkeley DB library varies depending on the compiler, machine architecture, and configuration options. As an estimate, production Berkeley DB libraries built with GNU gcc version 3.X compilers have footprints in the range of 400KB to 1.2MB on 32-bit x86 architectures, and in the range of 500KB to 1.4MB on 64-bit x86 architectures.

For assistance in further reducing the size of the Berkeley DB library, or in building small memory footprint libraries on other systems, please contact Berkeley DB support.

## Changing compile or load options

You can specify compiler and/or compile and load time flags by using environment variables during Berkeley DB configuration. For example, if you want to use a specific compiler, specify the CC environment variable before running configure:

```
prompt: env CC=gcc ../dist/configure
```

Using anything other than the native compiler will almost certainly mean that you'll want to check the flags specified to the compiler and loader, too.

To specify debugging and optimization options for the C compiler, use the CFLAGS environment variable:

```
prompt: env CFLAGS=-O2 ../dist/configure
```

To specify header file search directories and other miscellaneous options for the C preprocessor and compiler, use the CPPFLAGS environment variable:

```
prompt: env CPPFLAGS=-I/usr/contrib/include ../dist/configure
```

To specify debugging and optimization options for the C++ compiler, use the CXXFLAGS environment variable:

```
prompt: env CXXFLAGS=-Woverloaded-virtual ../dist/configure
```

To specify miscellaneous options or additional library directories for the linker, use the LDFLAGS environment variable:

```
prompt: env LDFLAGS="-N32 -L/usr/local/lib" ../dist/configure
```

If you want to specify additional libraries, set the LIBS environment variable before running configure. For example, the following would specify two additional libraries to load, "posix" and "socket":

```
prompt: env LIBS="-lposix -lsocket" ../dist/configure
```

Make sure that you prepend -L to any library directory names and that you prepend -I to any include file directory names! Also, if the arguments you specify contain blank or tab characters, be sure to quote them as shown previously; that is with single or double quotes around the values you are specifying for LIBS.

The `env` command, which is available on most systems, simply sets one or more environment variables before running a command. If the `env` command is not available to you, you can set the environment variables in your shell before running `configure`. For example, in `sh` or `ksh`, you could do the following:

```
prompt: LIBS="-lposix -lsocket" ../dist/configure
```

In `csh` or `tcsh`, you could do the following:

```
prompt: setenv LIBS "-lposix -lsocket"
prompt: ../dist/configure
```

See your command shell's manual page for further information.

## Installing Berkeley DB

Berkeley DB installs the following files into the following locations, with the following default values:

Configuration Variables	Default value
<code>--prefix</code>	<code>/usr/local/BerkeleyDB.Major.Minor</code>
<code>--exec_prefix</code>	<code>\$(prefix)</code>
<code>--bindir</code>	<code>\$(exec_prefix)/bin</code>
<code>--includedir</code>	<code>\$(prefix)/include</code>
<code>--libdir</code>	<code>\$(exec_prefix)/lib</code>
<code>docdir</code>	<code>\$(prefix)/docs</code>

Files	Default location
include files	<code>\$(includedir)</code>
libraries	<code>\$(libdir)</code>
utilities	<code>\$(bindir)</code>
documentation	<code>\$(docdir)</code>

With one exception, this follows the GNU Autoconf and GNU Coding Standards installation guidelines; please see that documentation for more information and rationale.

The single exception is the Berkeley DB documentation. The Berkeley DB documentation is provided in HTML format, not in UNIX-style `man` or GNU `info` format. For this reason, Berkeley DB configuration does not support `--infodir` or `--mandir`. To change the default installation location for the Berkeley DB documentation, modify the Makefile variable, `docdir`.

When installing Berkeley DB on filesystems shared by machines of different architectures, please note that although Berkeley DB include files are installed based on the value of `$(prefix)`, rather than `$(exec_prefix)`, the Berkeley DB include files are not always architecture independent.

To move the entire installation tree to somewhere besides `/usr/local`, change the value of `prefix`.

To move the binaries and libraries to a different location, change the value of `exec_prefix`. The values of `includedir` and `libdir` may be similarly changed.

Any of these values except for `docdir` may be set as part of the configuration:

```
prompt: ../dist/configure --bindir=/usr/local/bin
```

Any of these values, including `docdir`, may be changed when doing the install itself:

```
prompt: make prefix=/usr/contrib/dbd install
```

The Berkeley DB installation process will attempt to create any directories that do not already exist on the system.

## Dynamic shared libraries

**Warning:** the following information is intended to be generic and is likely to be correct for most UNIX systems. Unfortunately, dynamic shared libraries are not standard between UNIX systems, so there may be information here that is not correct for your system. If you have problems, consult your compiler and linker manual pages, or your system administrator.

The Berkeley DB dynamic shared libraries are created with the name `libdb-major.minor.so`, where `major` is the major version number and `minor` is the minor version number. Other shared libraries are created if Java and Tcl support are enabled: specifically, `libdb_java-major.minor.so` and `libdb_tcl-major.minor.so`.

On most UNIX systems, when any shared library is created, the linker stamps it with a "SONAME". In the case of Berkeley DB, the SONAME is `libdb-major.minor.so`. It is important to realize that applications linked against a shared library remember the SONAMEs of the libraries they use and not the underlying names in the filesystem.

When the Berkeley DB shared library is installed, links are created in the install lib directory so that `libdb-major.minor.so`, `libdb-major.so`, and `libdb.so` all refer to the same library. This library will have an SONAME of `libdb-major.minor.so`.

Any previous versions of the Berkeley DB libraries that are present in the install directory (such as `libdb-2.7.so` or `libdb-2.so`) are left unchanged. (Removing or moving old shared libraries is one drastic way to identify applications that have been linked against those vintage releases.)

Once you have installed the Berkeley DB libraries, unless they are installed in a directory where the linker normally looks for shared libraries, you will need to specify the installation directory as part of compiling and linking against Berkeley DB. Consult your system manuals or system administrator for ways to specify a shared library directory when compiling and linking applications with the Berkeley DB libraries. Many systems support environment variables (for example, `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` or `LD_RUN_PATH`), or system configuration files (for example, `/etc/ld.so.conf`) for this purpose.

**Warning:** some UNIX installations may have an already existing `/usr/lib/libdb.so`, and this library may be an incompatible version of Berkeley DB.

We recommend that applications link against `libdb.so` (for example, using `-ldb`). Even though the linker uses the file named `libdb.so`, the executable file for the application remembers the library's SONAME (`libdb-major.minor.so`). This has the effect of marking the applications with the versions they need at link time. Because applications locate their needed SONAMEs when they are executed, all previously linked applications will continue to run using the library they were linked with, even when a new version of Berkeley DB is installed and the file `libdb.so` is replaced with a new version.

Applications that know they are using features specific to a particular Berkeley DB release can be linked to that release. For example, an application wanting to link to Berkeley DB major release "3" can link using `-ldb-3`, and applications that know about a particular minor release number can specify both major and minor release numbers; for example, `-ldb-3.5`.

If you want to link with Berkeley DB before performing library installation, the "make" command will have created a shared library object in the `.libs` subdirectory of the build directory, such as `build_unix/.libs/libdb-major.minor.so`. If you want to link a file against this library, with, for example, a major number of "3" and a minor number of "5", you should be able to do something like the following:

```
cc -L BUILD_DIRECTORY/.libs -o testprog testprog.o -ldb-3.5
env LD_LIBRARY_PATH="BUILD_DIRECTORY/.libs:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH" ./testprog
```

where `BUILD_DIRECTORY` is the full directory path to the directory where you built Berkeley DB.

The `libtool` program (which is configured in the build directory) can be used to set the shared library path and run a program. For example, the following runs the `gdb` debugger on the `db_dump` utility after setting the appropriate paths:

```
libtool gdb db_dump
```

`Libtool` may not know what to do with arbitrary commands (it is hardwired to recognize "gdb" and some other commands). If it complains the mode argument will usually resolve the problem:

```
libtool --mode=execute my_debugger db_dump
```

On most systems, using `libtool` in this way is exactly equivalent to setting the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable and then executing the program. On other systems, using `libtool` has the virtue of knowing about any other details on systems that don't behave in this typical way.

## Running the test suite under UNIX

The Berkeley DB test suite is built if you specify `--enable-test` as an argument when configuring Berkeley DB. The test suite also requires that you configure and build the Tcl interface to the library.

Before running the tests for the first time, you may need to edit the `include.tcl` file in your build directory. The Berkeley DB configuration assumes that you intend to use the version of the `tclsh` utility included in the Tcl installation with which Berkeley DB was configured to run

the test suite, and further assumes that the test suite will be run with the libraries prebuilt in the Berkeley DB build directory. If either of these assumptions are incorrect, you will need to edit the `include.tcl` file and change the following line to correctly specify the full path to the version of `tclsh` with which you are going to run the test suite:

```
set tclsh_path ...
```

You may also need to change the following line to correctly specify the path from the directory where you are running the test suite to the location of the Berkeley DB Tcl library you built:

```
set test_path ...
```

It may not be necessary that this be a full path if you have configured your system's shared library mechanisms to search the directory where you built or installed the Tcl library.

All Berkeley DB tests are run from within `tclsh`. After starting `tclsh`, you must source the file `test.tcl` in the test directory. For example, if you built in the `build_unix` directory of the distribution, this would be done using the following command:

```
% source ../test/test.tcl
```

If no errors occur, you should get a `%` prompt.

You are now ready to run tests in the test suite; see [Running the test suite](#) for more information.

## Building SQL Test Suite on Unix

The Berkeley DB SQL interface test suite is built if you specify `--enable-test` and `--enable-sql` as arguments, when configuring Berkeley DB. The test suite also requires that you build the Berkeley DB Tcl API.

```
../dist/configure --enable-sql --enable-test --with-tcl=/usr/lib
```

This builds the `testfixture` project in `../build_unix/sql`.

To enable extensions like full text search layer and R-Tree layer in the SQL test suite, configure with `--enable-amalgamation`.

## Architecture independent FAQ

1. I have `gcc` installed, but `configure` fails to find it.

Berkeley DB defaults to using the native C compiler if none is specified. That is usually `cc`, but some platforms require a different compiler to build multithreaded code. To configure Berkeley DB to build with `gcc`, run `configure` as follows:

```
env CC=gcc ../dist/configure ...
```

2. When compiling with `gcc`, I get unreferenced symbols; for example the following:

```
symbol __muldi3: referenced symbol not found
symbol __cmpdi2: referenced symbol not found
```

Berkeley DB often uses 64-bit integral types on systems supporting large files, and gcc performs operations on those types by calling library functions. These unreferenced symbol errors are usually caused by linking an application by calling "ld" rather than by calling "gcc": gcc will link in libgcc.a and will resolve the symbols. If that does not help, another possible workaround is to reconfigure Berkeley DB using the `--disable-largefile` configuration option and then rebuild.

### 3. My C++ program traps during a failure in a DB call on my gcc-based system.

We believe there are some severe bugs in the implementation of exceptions for some gcc compilers. Exceptions require some interaction between compiler, assembler, and runtime libraries. We're not sure exactly what is at fault, but one failing combination is gcc 2.7.2.3 running on SuSE Linux 6.0. The problem on this system can be seen with a rather simple test case of an exception thrown from a shared library and caught in the main program.

A variation of this problem seems to occur on AIX, although we believe it does not necessarily involve shared libraries on that platform.

If you see a trap that occurs when an exception might be thrown by the Berkeley DB runtime, we suggest that you use static libraries instead of shared libraries. See the documentation for configuration. If this doesn't work and you have a choice of compilers, try using a more recent gcc- or a non-gcc based compiler to build Berkeley DB.

Finally, you can disable the use of exceptions in the C++ runtime for Berkeley DB by using the `DB_CXX_NO_EXCEPTIONS` flag with the `DbEnv` or `Db` constructors. When this flag is on, all C++ methods fail by returning an error code rather than throwing an exception.

### 4. I get unexpected results and database corruption when running threaded programs.

**I get error messages that mutex (for example, `pthread_mutex_XXX` or `mutex_XXX`) functions are undefined when linking applications with Berkeley DB.**

On some architectures, the Berkeley DB library uses the ISO POSIX standard pthreads and UNIX International (UI) threads interfaces for underlying mutex support; for example, Solaris and HP-UX. You can specify compilers or compiler flags, or link with the appropriate thread library when loading your application to resolve the undefined references:

```
cc ... -lpthread ...
cc ... -lthread ...
xlc_r ...
cc ... -mt ...
```

See the appropriate architecture-specific Reference Guide pages for more information.

On systems where more than one type of mutex is available, it may be necessary for applications to use the same threads package from which Berkeley DB draws its mutexes.



For example, if Berkeley DB was built to use the POSIX pthreads mutex calls for mutex support, the application may need to be written to use the POSIX pthreads interfaces for its threading model. This is only conjecture at this time, and although we know of no systems that actually have this requirement, it's not unlikely that some exist.

In a few cases, Berkeley DB can be configured to use specific underlying mutex interfaces. You can use the `--enable-posixmutexes` and `--enable-uimutexes` configuration options to specify the POSIX and Unix International (UI) threads packages. This should not, however, be necessary in most cases.

In some cases, it is vitally important to make sure that you load the correct library. For example, on Solaris systems, there are POSIX pthread interfaces in the C library, so applications can link Berkeley DB using only C library and not see any undefined symbols. However, the C library POSIX pthread mutex support is insufficient for Berkeley DB, and Berkeley DB cannot detect that fact. Similar errors can arise when applications (for example, `tclsh`) use `dlopen` to dynamically load Berkeley DB as a library.

If you are seeing problems in this area after you confirm that you're linking with the correct libraries, there are two other things you can try. First, if your platform supports interlibrary dependencies, we recommend that you change the Berkeley DB Makefile to specify the appropriate threads library when creating the Berkeley DB shared library, as an interlibrary dependency. Second, if your application is using `dlopen` to dynamically load Berkeley DB, specify the appropriate thread library on the link line when you load the application itself.

**5. I get core dumps when running programs that fork children.**

Berkeley DB handles should not be shared across process forks, each forked child should acquire its own Berkeley DB handles.

**6. I get reports of uninitialized memory reads and writes when running software analysis tools (for example, Rational Software Corp.'s Purify tool).**

For performance reasons, Berkeley DB does not write the unused portions of database pages or fill in unused structure fields. To turn off these errors when running software analysis tools, build with the `--enable-umrw` configuration option.

**7. Berkeley DB programs or the test suite fail unexpectedly.**

The Berkeley DB architecture does not support placing the shared memory regions on remote filesystems -- for example, the Network File System (NFS) or the Andrew File System (AFS). For this reason, the shared memory regions (normally located in the database home directory) must reside on a local filesystem. See Shared memory region for more information.

With respect to running the test suite, always check to make sure that `TESTDIR` is not on a remote mounted filesystem.

**8. The `db_dump` utility fails to build.**

The `db_dump185` utility is the utility that supports the conversion of Berkeley DB 1.85 and earlier databases to current database formats. If the build errors look something like the following, it means the `db.h` include file being loaded is not a Berkeley DB 1.85 version include file:

```
db_dump185.c: In function `main':
db_dump185.c:210: warning: assignment makes pointer from integer
without a cast
db_dump185.c:212: warning: assignment makes pointer from integer
without a cast
db_dump185.c:227: structure has no member named `seq'
db_dump185.c:227: `R_NEXT' undeclared (first use in this function)
```

If the build errors look something like the following, it means that the Berkeley DB 1.85 code was not found in the standard libraries:

```
cc -o db_dump185 db_dump185.o
ld:
Unresolved:
dbopen
```

To build the `db_dump185` utility, the Berkeley DB version 1.85 code must already been built and available on the system. If the Berkeley DB 1.85 header file is not found in a standard place, or if the library is not part of the standard libraries used for loading, you will need to edit your Makefile, and change the following lines:

```
DB185INC=
DB185LIB=
```

So that the system Berkeley DB 1.85 header file and library are found; for example:

```
DB185INC=/usr/local/include
DB185LIB=-ldb185
```

## AIX

### 1. I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.

Special compile-time flags are required when compiling threaded applications on AIX. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `_THREAD_SAFE` flag and load with specific libraries; for example, `-lc_r`. Specifying the compiler name with a trailing `_r` usually performs the right actions for the system.

```
xlc_r ...
cc -D_THREAD_SAFE -lc_r ...
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

### 2. I can't run using the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` option to `DB_ENV->open()`.

AIX 4.1 allows applications to map only 10 system shared memory segments. In AIX 4.3, this has been raised to 256K segments, but only if you set the environment variable "export EXTSHM=ON".

3. **On AIX 4.3.2 (or before) I see duplicate symbol warnings when building the C++ shared library and when linking applications.**

We are aware of some duplicate symbol warnings with this platform, but they do not appear to affect the correct operation of applications.

4. **On AIX 4.3.3 I see undefined symbols for DbEnv::set\_error\_stream, Db::set\_error\_stream or DbEnv::verify when linking C++ applications. (These undefined symbols also appear when building the Berkeley DB C++ example applications).**

By default, Berkeley DB is built with `_LARGE_FILES` set to 1 to support the creation of "large" database files. However, this also affects how standard classes, like `iostream`, are named internally. When building your application, use a `"-D_LARGE_FILES=1"` compilation option, or insert `"#define _LARGE_FILES 1"` before any `#include` statements.

5. **I can't create database files larger than 1GB on AIX.**

If you're running on AIX 4.1 or earlier, try changing the source code for `os/os_open.c` to always specify the `O_LARGEFILE` flag to the `open(2)` system call, and recompile Berkeley DB from scratch.

Also, the documentation for the IBM Visual Age compiler states that it does not support the 64-bit filesystem APIs necessary for creating large files; the `ibmcxx` product must be used instead. We have not heard whether the GNU `gcc` compiler supports the 64-bit APIs or not.

Finally, to create large files under AIX, the filesystem has to be configured to support large files and the system wide user hard-limit for file sizes has to be greater than 1GB.

6. **I see errors about "open64" when building Berkeley DB applications.**

System include files (most commonly `fcntl.h`) in some releases of AIX, HP-UX and Solaris redefine "open" when large-file support is enabled for applications. This causes problems when compiling applications because "open" is a method in the Berkeley DB APIs. To work around this problem:

- a. Avoid including the problematical system include files in source code files which also include Berkeley DB include files and call into the Berkeley DB API.
- b. Before building Berkeley DB, modify the generated include file `db.h` to itself include the problematical system include files.
- c. Turn off Berkeley DB large-file support by specifying the `--disable-largefile` configuration option and rebuilding.

7. I see the error "Redeclaration of lseek64" when building Berkeley DB with the `--enable-sql` and `--enable-test` options.

In some releases of AIX, the system include files (most commonly `unistd.h`) redefine `lseek` to `lseek64` when large-file support is enabled even though `lseek` may have already been defined when the `_LARGE_FILE_API` macro is on. To work around this problem, do either one of the following:

- a. Disable large-file support in Berkeley DB by specifying the `--disable-largefile` configuration option and rebuilding.
- b. Edit `db.h` manually after running the `configure` command, and remove the line that includes `unistd.h`.

## FreeBSD

1. I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.

Special compile-time flags are required when compiling threaded applications on FreeBSD. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `_THREAD_SAFE` and `-pthread` flags:

```
cc -D_THREAD_SAFE -pthread ...
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

2. I see `fsync` and `close` system call failures when accessing databases or log files on NFS-mounted filesystems.

Some FreeBSD releases are known to return `ENOLCK` from `fsync` and `close` calls on NFS-mounted filesystems, even though the call has succeeded. The Berkeley DB code should be modified to ignore `ENOLCK` errors, or no Berkeley DB files should be placed on NFS-mounted filesystems on these systems.

## HP-UX

1. I can't specify the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` flag to `DB_ENV->open()`.

The `shmget(2)` interfaces are not always used on HP-UX, even though they exist, because anonymous memory allocated using `shmget(2)` cannot be used to store the standard HP-UX msemaphore semaphores. For this reason, it may not be possible to specify the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` flag on some versions of HP-UX. (We have seen this problem only on HP-UX 10.XX, so the simplest workaround may be to upgrade your HP-UX release.)

2. I can't specify both the `DB_PRIVATE` and `DB_THREAD` flags to `DB_ENV->open()`.

It is not possible to store the standard HP-UX msemaphore semaphores in memory returned by `malloc(3)` in some versions of HP-UX. For this reason, it may not be possible to specify both the `DB_PRIVATE` and `DB_THREAD` flags on some versions of HP-UX. (We have seen this problem only on some older HP-UX platforms, so the simplest workaround may be to upgrade your HP-UX release.)

### 3. I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.

Special compile-time flags are required when compiling threaded applications on HP-UX. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `_REENTRANT` flag:

```
cc -D_REENTRANT ...
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

### 4. An ENOMEM error is returned from `DB_ENV->open()` or `DB_ENV->remove()`.

Due to the constraints of the PA-RISC memory architecture, HP-UX does not allow a process to map a file into its address space multiple times. For this reason, each Berkeley DB environment may be opened only once by a process on HP-UX; that is, calls to `DB_ENV->open()` will fail if the specified Berkeley DB environment has been opened and not subsequently closed.

### 5. When compiling with `gcc`, I see the following error:

```
#error "Large Files (ILP32) not supported in strict ANSI mode."
```

We believe this is an error in the HP-UX include files, but we don't really understand it. The only workaround we have found is to add `-D__STDC_EXT__` to the C preprocessor defines as part of compilation.

### 6. When using the Tcl or Perl APIs (including running the test suite), I see the error "Can't shl\_load() a library containing Thread Local Storage".

This problem happens when HP-UX has been configured to use pthread mutex locking, and an attempt is made to call Berkeley DB using the Tcl or Perl APIs. We have never found any way to fix this problem as part of the Berkeley DB build process. To work around the problem, rebuild tclsh or Perl, and modify its build process to explicitly link it against the HP-UX pthread library (currently `/usr/lib/libpthread.a`).

### 7. When running an executable that has been dynamically linked against the Berkeley DB library, I see the error "Can't find path for shared library" even though I correctly set the `SHLIB_PATH` environment variable.

By default, some versions of HP-UX ignore the dynamic library search path specified by the `SHLIB_PATH` environment variable. To work around this, specify the `"+s"` flag to `ld` when linking, or run the following command on the executable that is not working:

```
chatr +s enable -l /full/path/to/libdb-3.2.sl ...
```

### 8. When building for an IA64 processor, I see either bus errors or compiler warnings about converting between unaligned types (#4232). How can I resolve them?

Berkeley DB requires that data types containing members with different sizes be aligned in a consistent way. The HP-UX compiler does not provide this alignment property by default.

The compiler can be made to generate adequately aligned data by passing the `+u1` option to the compiler. See the HP documentation about the [+u1 flag](#) for more information.

9. **I see errors about "open64" when building Berkeley DB applications.**

System include files (most commonly `fcntl.h`) in some releases of AIX, HP-UX and Solaris redefine "open" when large-file support is enabled for applications. This causes problems when compiling applications because "open" is a method in the Berkeley DB APIs. To work around this problem:

- a. Avoid including the problematical system include files in source code files which also include Berkeley DB include files and call into the Berkeley DB API.
- b. Before building Berkeley DB, modify the generated include file `db.h` to itself include the problematical system include files.
- c. Turn off Berkeley DB large-file support by specifying the `--disable-largefile` configuration option and rebuilding.

## IRIX

1. **I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.**

Special compile-time flags are required when compiling threaded applications on IRIX. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `_SGI_MP_SOURCE` flag:

```
cc -D_SGI_MP_SOURCE ...
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

## Linux

1. **I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.**

Special compile-time flags are required when compiling threaded applications on Linux. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `_REENTRANT` flag:

```
cc -D_REENTRANT ...
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

2. **I see database corruption when accessing databases.**

Some Linux filesystems do not support POSIX filesystem semantics. Specifically, `ext2` and early releases of `ReiserFS`, and `ext3` in some configurations, do not support "ordered data mode" and may insert random data into database or log files when systems crash. Berkeley DB files should not be placed on a filesystem that does not support, or is not configured to support, POSIX semantics.

3. **What scheduler should I use?**

In some Linux kernels you can select schedulers, and the default is the "anticipatory" scheduler. We recommend not using the "anticipatory" scheduler for transaction processing workloads.

## Mac OS X

1. When trying to link multiple Berkeley DB language interfaces (for example, Tcl, C++, Java, Python) into a single process, I get "multiple definitions" errors from dyld.

To fix this problem, set the environment variable `MACOSX_DEPLOYMENT_TARGET` to 10.3 (or your current version of OS X), and reconfigure and rebuild Berkeley DB from scratch. See the OS X `ld(1)` and `dyld(1)` man pages for information about how OS X handles symbol namespaces, as well as undefined and multiply-defined symbols.

2. When trying to use system-backed shared memory on OS X I see failures about "too many open files".

The default number of shared memory segments on OS X is too low. To fix this problem, edit the file `/etc/rc`, changing the `kern.sysv.shmmax` and `kern.sysv.shmseg` values as follows:

```
*** /etc/rc.orig      Fri Dec 19 09:34:09 2003
--- /etc/rc          Fri Dec 19 09:33:53 2003
*****
*** 84,93 ****
    # System tuning
    sysctl -w kern.maxvnodes=$(echo $(sysctl -n hw.physmem) '33554432 /
512 * 1024 +p'|dc)
! sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmax=4194304
    sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmin=1
    sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmni=32
! sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmseg=8
    sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmall=1024
    if [ -f /etc/sysctl-macosxserver.conf ]; then
        awk '{ if (!-1 && -1) print $1 }' <
/etc/sysctl-macosxserver.conf | while read
--- 84,93 ----
    # System tuning
    sysctl -w kern.maxvnodes=$(echo $(sysctl -n hw.physmem) '33554432 /
512 * 1024 +p'|dc)
! sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmax=134217728
    sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmin=1
    sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmmni=32
! sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmseg=32
    sysctl -w kern.sysv.shmall=1024
    if [ -f /etc/sysctl-macosxserver.conf ]; then
        awk '{ if (!-1 && -1) print $1 }' <
/etc/sysctl-macosxserver.conf | while read
```

and then reboot the system.

## OSF/1

1. I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.

Special compile-time flags are required when compiling threaded applications on OSF/1. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `_REENTRANT` flag:

```
cc -D_REENTRANT . . .
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

## QNX

### 1. To what versions of QNX has DB been ported?

Berkeley DB has been ported to the QNX Neutrino technology which is commonly referred to as QNX RTP (Real-Time Platform). Berkeley DB has not been ported to earlier versions of QNX, such as QNX 4.25.

### 2. Building Berkeley DB shared libraries fails.

The `/bin/sh` utility distributed with some QNX releases drops core when running the GNU `libtool` script (which is used to build Berkeley DB shared libraries). There are two workarounds for this problem: First, only build static libraries. You can disable building shared libraries by specifying the configuration flag when configuring Berkeley DB.

Second, build Berkeley DB using an alternate shell. QNX distributions include an accessories disk with additional tools. One of the included tools is the GNU bash shell, which is able to run the `libtool` script. To build Berkeley DB using an alternate shell, move `/bin/sh` aside, link or copy the alternate shell into that location, configure, build and install Berkeley DB, and then replace the original shell utility.

### 3. Are there any QNX filesystem issues?

Berkeley DB generates temporary files for use in transactionally protected file system operations. Due to the filename length limit of 48 characters in the QNX filesystem, applications that are using transactions should specify a database name that is at most 43 characters.

### 4. What are the implications of QNX's requirement to use `shm_open(2)` in order to use `mmap(2)`?

QNX requires that files mapped with `mmap(2)` be opened using `shm_open(2)`. There are other places in addition to the environment shared memory regions, where Berkeley DB tries to memory map files if it can.

The memory pool subsystem normally attempts to use `mmap(2)` even when using private memory, as indicated by the `DB_PRIVATE` flag to `DB_ENV->open()`. In the case of QNX, if an application is using private memory, Berkeley DB will not attempt to map the memory and will instead use the local cache.

### 5. What are the implications of QNX's mutex implementation using microkernel resources?



On QNX, the primitives implementing mutexes consume system resources. Therefore, if an application unexpectedly fails, those resources could leak. Berkeley DB solves this problem by always allocating mutexes in the persistent shared memory regions. Then, if an application fails, running recovery or explicitly removing the database environment by calling the `DB_ENV->remove()` method will allow Berkeley DB to release those previously held mutex resources. If an application specifies the `DB_PRIVATE` flag (choosing not to use persistent shared memory), and then fails, mutexes allocated in that private memory may leak their underlying system resources. Therefore, the `DB_PRIVATE` flag should be used with caution on QNX.

6. **The make clean command fails to execute when building the Berkeley DB SQL interface.**

Remove the build directory manually to clean up and proceed.

## SCO

1. **If I build with gcc, programs such as db\_dump and db\_stat core dump immediately when invoked.**

We suspect gcc or the runtime loader may have a bug, but we haven't tracked it down. If you want to use gcc, we suggest building static libraries.

## Solaris

1. **I can't compile and run multithreaded applications.**

Special compile-time flags and additional libraries are required when compiling threaded applications on Solaris. If you are compiling a threaded application, you must compile with the `D_REENTRANT` flag and link with the `libpthread.a` or `libthread.a` libraries:

```
cc -mt ...
cc -D_REENTRANT ... -lthread
cc -D_REENTRANT ... -lpthread
```

The Berkeley DB library will automatically build with the correct options.

2. **I've installed gcc on my Solaris system, but configuration fails because the compiler doesn't work.**

On some versions of Solaris, there is a `cc` executable in the user's path, but all it does is display an error message and fail:

```
% which cc
/usr/ucb/cc
% cc
/usr/ucb/cc: language optional software package not installed
```

Because Berkeley DB always uses the native compiler in preference to gcc, this is a fatal error. If the error message you are seeing is the following, then this may be the problem:

```
checking whether the C compiler (cc -O) works... no
configure: error: installation or configuration problem: C compiler
cannot create executables.
```

The simplest workaround is to set your CC environment variable to the system compiler and reconfigure; for example:

```
env CC=gcc ../dist/configure
```

If you are using the --configure-cxx option, you may also want to specify a C++ compiler, for example the following:

```
env CC=gcc CCC=g++ ../dist/configure
```

3. **I see the error "libc internal error: \_rmutex\_unlock: rmutex not held", followed by a core dump when running threaded or JAVA programs.**

This is a known bug in Solaris 2.5 and it is fixed by Sun patch 103187-25.

4. **I see error reports of nonexistent files, corrupted metadata pages and core dumps.**

Solaris 7 contains a bug in the threading libraries (-lpthread, -lthread), which causes the wrong version of the pwrite routine to be linked into the application if the thread library is linked in after the C library. The result will be that the pwrite function is called rather than the pwrite64. To work around the problem, use an explicit link order when creating your application.

Sun Microsystems is tracking this problem with Bug Id's 4291109 and 4267207, and patch 106980-09 to Solaris 7 fixes the problem:

```
Bug Id: 4291109
Duplicate of: 4267207
Category: library
Subcategory: libthread
State: closed
Synopsis: pwrite64 mapped to pwrite
Description:
When libthread is linked after libc, there is a table of functions in
libthread that gets "wired into" libc via _libc_threads_interface().
The table in libthread is wrong in both Solaris 7 and on28_35 for the
TI_PWRITE64 row (see near the end).
```

5. **I see corrupted databases when doing hot backups or creating a hot failover archive.**

The Solaris cp utility is implemented using the mmap system call, and so writes are not blocked when it reads database pages. See Berkeley DB recoverability for more information.

6. **Performance is slow and the application is doing a lot of I/O to the disk on which the database environment's files are stored.**

By default, Solaris periodically flushes dirty blocks from memory-mapped files to the backing filesystem. This includes the Berkeley DB database environment's shared memory regions and can affect Berkeley DB performance. Workarounds include creating the shared regions in system shared memory (DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM) or application private memory (DB\_PRIVATE), or configuring Solaris to not flush memory-mapped pages. For more information, see the "Solaris Tunable Parameters Reference Manual: fsflush and Related Tunables".

**7. I see errors about "open64" when building Berkeley DB applications.**

System include files (most commonly `fcntl.h`) in some releases of AIX, HP-UX and Solaris redefine "open" when large-file support is enabled for applications. This causes problems when compiling applications because "open" is a method in the Berkeley DB APIs. To work around this problem:

- a. Avoid including the problematical system include files in source code files which also include Berkeley DB include files and call into the Berkeley DB API.
- b. Before building Berkeley DB, modify the generated include file `db.h` to itself include the problematical system include files.
- c. Turn off Berkeley DB large-file support by specifying the `--disable-largefile` configuration option and rebuilding.

## SunOS

**1. I can't specify the DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM flag to DB\_ENV->open().**

The `shmget(2)` interfaces are not used on SunOS releases prior to 5.0, even though they apparently exist, because the distributed include files did not allow them to be compiled. For this reason, it will not be possible to specify the `DB_SYSTEM_MEM` flag to those versions of SunOS.

## Ultrix

**1. Configuration complains that `mmap(2)` interfaces aren't being used.**

The `mmap(2)` interfaces are not used on Ultrix, even though they exist, because they are known to not work correctly.

---

# Chapter 7. Building Berkeley DB for VxWorks

## Building for VxWorks 5.4 and 5.5

The `build_vxworks` directory in the Berkeley DB distribution contains a workspace and project files for Tornado 2.0/VxWorks 5.4 and Tornado 2.2/VxWorks 5.5.

File	Description
BerkeleyDB20.wsp	Berkeley DB Workspace file for Tornado 2.0
BerkeleyDB20.wpj	Berkeley DB Project file for Tornado 2.0
BerkeleyDB22.wsp	Berkeley DB Workspace file for Tornado 2.2
BerkeleyDB22.wpj	Berkeley DB Project file for Tornado 2.2
dbdemo/dbdemo20.wpj	<a href="#">VxWorks notes (page 61)</a> project file for Tornado 2.0
dbdemo/dbdemo22.wpj	<a href="#">VxWorks notes (page 61)</a> project file for Tornado 2.2
db_*/*20.wpj	<a href="#">VxWorks notes (page 61)</a> project files for Tornado 2.0
db_*/*22.wpj	<a href="#">VxWorks notes (page 61)</a> project files for Tornado 2.2

### Building With Tornado 2.0 or Tornado 2.2

Open the workspace **BerkeleyDB20.wsp** or **BerkeleyDB22.wsp**. The list of projects in this workspace will be shown. These projects were created for the x86 BSP for VxWorks.

The remainder of this document assumes that you already have a VxWorks target and a target server, both up and running. It also assumes that your VxWorks image is configured properly for your needs. It also assumes that you have an acceptable file system already available. See [VxWorks FAQ \(page 62\)](#) for more information about file system requirements. See [VxWorks notes \(page 61\)](#) for more information about building a small footprint version of Berkeley DB.

First, you need to set the include directories. To do this, go to the *Builds* tab for the workspace. Open up *Berkeley DB Builds*. You will see several different builds, containing different configurations. All of the projects in the Berkeley DB workspace are created to be downloadable applications.

Build	Description
PENTIUM_debug	x86 BSP with debugging
PENTIUM_release	x86 BSP no debugging

You have to add a new build specification if you use a different BSP, want to add a build for the simulator or want to customize further. For instance, if you have the Power PC (PPC) BSP,

you need to add a new build for the PPC tool chain. To do so, select the "Builds" tab, select the Berkeley DB project name, and right-click. Choose the *New Build...* selection and create the new build target. For your new build target, you need to decide whether it should be built for debugging. See the properties of the Pentium builds for ways to configure for each case. After you add this build you, you still need to configure correctly the include directories, as described in the sections that follow.

If you are running with a different BSP, you should remove the build specifications that do not apply to your hardware. We recommend that you do this after you configure any new build specifications first. The Tornado tools will get confused if you have a PENTIUMgnu build specification for a PPC BSP, for instance.

Select the build you are interested in, and right-click. Choose the *Properties...* selection. At this point, a tabbed dialog should appear. In this new window, choose the *C/C++ compiler* tab. In the edit box, you need to modify the full pathname of the *build\_vxworks* subdirectory of Berkeley DB, followed by the full pathname of Berkeley DB. Then, click OK. Note that some versions of Tornado (such as the version for Windows) do not correctly handle relative pathnames in the include paths.

To build and download the Berkeley DB downloadable application for the first time requires several steps:

1. Select the build you are interested in, and right-click. Choose the *Set... as Active Build* selection.
2. Select the build you are interested in, and right-click. Choose the *Dependencies...* selection. Run dependencies over all files in the Berkeley DB project.
3. Select the build you are interested in, and right-click. Choose the *Rebuild All (Berkeley DB.out)* selection.
4. Select the Berkeley DB project name, and right-click. Choose the *Download "Berkeley DB.out"* selection.

Note that the output file listed about will really be listed as *BerkeleyDB20.out* or *BerkeleyDB22.out* depending on which version of Tornado you are running. You need to repeat this procedure for all builds you are interested in building, as well as for all of the utility project builds you want to run.

## Building for VxWorks 6.x

### Building With Wind River Workbench using the Makefile

In VxWorks6.x, developers use Wind River Workbench for software development. Two makefiles are provided in the *db/build\_vxworks* directory. Use them to build Berkeley DB or Berkeley DB small build, using the build chain provided with Wind River Workbench.

We assume that you have installed all necessary VxWorks6.x software including the Wind River Workbench, and that you know how to use it.

Use the following steps to build Berkeley DB:

1. Setting variables in the Makefile. Open the Makefile and modify the BDB\_ROOT variable to the path of your Berkeley DB source tree's root directory. You may need to set other variables when you build on different platforms, such as BUILD\_SPEC, DEBUG\_MODE, PROJECT\_TYPE, CC\_ARCH\_SPEC, VXVER, build tool flags, and BUILD\_SPEC specific settings. Please refer to the documentation of the Workbench for a complete list of available values of each variable. You can also find out the list of values by creating a project using the Workbench. Each variable's available values will be listed in the GUI window which assigns values to that variable.
2. Make sure "make" can be found. Basically you need to set the make utility's path to environment variables.
3. Start up the wrenv utility of the Wind River Workbench.
4. In the command console, move to the \$(BDB\_ROOT)/build\_vxworks/ directory, rename the target makefile (Makefile.6x or Makefile.6x.small) to "Makefile", and run "make". The make process will start and create the directory "bdbvxw". It will contain all intermediate object files as well as the final built image "bdbvxw.out".
5. After the "bdbvxw.out" image is built, you can use command tools or the Workbench IDE to download and run it.
6. Test and Verification. There is a dbdemo and test\_micro, which you can run to verify whether everything works fine.

## VxWorks notes

Berkeley DB currently disallows the DB\_TRUNCATE flag to the DB->open() method on VxWorks because the operations this flag represents are not fully supported under VxWorks.

The DB->sync() method is implemented using an ioctl call into the file system driver with the FIOSYNC command. Most, but not all file system drivers support this call. Berkeley DB requires the use of a file system that supports FIOSYNC.

## Building and Running the Demo Program

The demo program should be built in a manner very similar to building Berkeley DB. If you want different or additional BSP build specifications you should add them by following the directions indicated in [Building for VxWorks 5.4 and 5.5 \(page 59\)](#).

The demo program can be downloaded and run by calling the entry function **dbdemo** with the pathname of a database to use. The demo program will ask for some input keys. It creates a database and adds those keys into the database, using the reverse of the key as the data value. When complete you can either enter EOF (control-D) or **quit** and the demo program will display all of the key/data items in the database.

## Building and Running the Utility Programs

The Berkeley DB utilities can be downloaded and run by calling the function equivalent to the utility's name. The utility functions take a string containing all the supported arguments. The program will then decompose that string into a traditional argc/argv used internally. For example, to execute db\_stat utility on a database within an environment you would

execute the following from the windsh prompt. Obviously you would change the pathname and database name to reflect your system.

```
> db_stat "-h /tmp/myenvhome -d mydatabase.db"
```

## VxWorks 5.4/5.5: shared memory

The memory on VxWorks is always resident and fully shared among all tasks running on the target. For this reason, the DB\_LOCKDOWN flag has no effect and the DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM flag is implied for any application that does not specify the DB\_PRIVATE flag. Note that the DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM flag requires all applications use a segment ID to ensure the applications do not overwrite each other's database environments: see the DB\_ENV->set\_shm\_key() method for more information.

## VxWorks 5.4/5.5: building a small memory footprint library

A default small footprint build is provided. This default provides equivalent to the `--enable-smallbuild` configuration option described in [Building a small memory footprint library \(page 41\)](#). In order to build the small footprint, you should move `db_config.h` aside and copy `db_config_small.h` to `db_config.h`. Then open up the appropriate small workspace file via Tornado and build as usual.

## Support for Replication Manager

The Berkeley DB Replication Manager component is available on Vxworks 6.x because it provides support for TCP/IP sockets and POSIX 1003.1 style networking and threads. You must build Berkeley DB for Vxworks using the command line. Prior to building Berkeley DB, ensure you set appropriate values for the variables specified in Step 1 of [Building for VxWorks 6.x \(page 60\)](#). To use Berkeley DB Replication Manager, `netLib` and `ioLib` must be present in the Vxworks image.

To use the Berkeley DB on Vxworks 5.x, make the following manual changes.

- Undefine the `HAVE_GETADDRINFO`, `HAVE_REPLICATION_THREADS`, and `HAVE_SYS_SOCKET_H` macros in the Berkeley DB include files `db_config.h` and `db_config_small.h`.
- Remove this line: `#include <pthread.h>`, present in the Berkeley DB include file `db.h`.

## VxWorks FAQ

- I get the error "Workspace open failed: This project workspace is an older format.", when trying to open the supplied workspace on Tornado 2.0 under Windows.

This error will occur if the files were extracted in a manner that adds a CR/LF to lines in the file. Make sure that you download the Berkeley DB ".zip" version of the Berkeley DB distribution, and, when extracting the Berkeley DB sources, that you use an unzipper program that will not do any conversion.

- I sometimes see spurious output errors about temporary directories.

These messages are coming from the `stat(2)` function call in VxWorks. Unlike other systems, there may not be a well known temporary directory on the target. Therefore, we

highly recommend that all applications use `DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir()` to specify a temporary directory for the application.

- **How can I build Berkeley DB without using Tornado?**

The simplest way to build Berkeley DB without using Tornado is to configure Berkeley DB on a UNIX system, and then use the Makefile and include files generated by that configuration as the starting point for your build. The Makefile and include files are created during configuration, in the current directory, based on your configuration decisions (for example, debugging vs. non-debugging builds), so you'll need to configure the system for the way you want Berkeley DB to be built.

Additionally, you'll need to account for the slight difference between the set of source files used in a UNIX build and the set used in a VxWorks build. You can use the following command to create a list of the Berkeley DB VxWorks files. The commands assume you are in the `build_vxworks` directory of the Berkeley DB distribution:

```
% cat > /tmp/files.sed
s/<BEGIN> FILE_//
s/_objects//
^D
% grep FILE_ BerkeleyDB.wpj | grep _objects | sed -f /tmp/files.sed \
> /tmp/db.files
```

You will then have a template Makefile and include files, and a list of VxWorks-specific source files. You will need to convert this Makefile and list of files into a form that is acceptable to your specific build environment.

- **Does Berkeley DB use floating point registers?**

Yes, there are a few places in Berkeley DB where floating point computations are performed. As a result, all applications that call `taskSpawn` should specify the `VX_FP_TASK` option.

- **Can I run the test suite under VxWorks?**

The test suite requires the Berkeley DB Tcl library. In turn, this library requires Tcl 8.4 or greater. In order to run the test suite, you would need to port Tcl 8.4 or greater to VxWorks. The Tcl shell included in `windsh` is not adequate for two reasons. First, it is based on Tcl 8.0. Second, it does not include the necessary Tcl components for adding a Tcl extension.

- **Are all Berkeley DB features available for VxWorks?**

All Berkeley DB features are available for VxWorks with the exception of the `DB_TRUNCATE` flag for `DB->open()`. The underlying mechanism needed for that flag is not available consistently across different file systems for VxWorks.

- **Are there any constraints using particular filesystem drivers?**

There are constraints using the dosFs filesystems with Berkeley DB. Namely, you must configure your dosFs filesystem to support long filenames if you are using Berkeley DB logging in your application. The VxWorks' dosFs 1.0 filesystem, by default, uses the old MS-



DOS 8.3 file-naming constraints, restricting to 8 character filenames with a 3 character extension. If you have configured with VxWorks' dosFs 2.0 you should be compatible with Windows FAT32 filesystems which supports long filenames.

- **Are there any dependencies on particular filesystem drivers?**

There is one dependency on specifics of filesystem drivers in the port of Berkeley DB to VxWorks. Berkeley DB synchronizes data using the FIOSYNC function to ioctl() (another option would have been to use the FIOFLUSH function instead). The FIOSYNC function was chosen because the NFS client driver, nfsDrv, only supports it and doesn't support FIOFLUSH. All local file systems, as of VxWorks 5.4, support FIOSYNC -- with the exception of rt11fsLib, which only supports FIOFLUSH. To use rt11fsLib, you will need to modify the os/os\_fsycn.c file to use the FIOFLUSH function; note that rt11fsLib cannot work with NFS clients.

- **Are there any known filesystem problems?**

During the course of our internal testing, we came across three problems with the dosFs 2.0 filesystem that warranted patches from Wind River Systems. We strongly recommend you upgrade to dosFs 2.2, **SPR 79795 (x86)** and **SPR 79569 (PPC)** which fixes all of these problems and many more. You should ask Wind River Systems for the patches to these problems if you encounter them and are unable to upgrade to dosFs 2.2.

The first problem is that files will seem to disappear. You should look at **SPR 31480** in the Wind River Systems' Support pages for a more detailed description of this problem.

The second problem is a semaphore deadlock within the dosFs filesystem code. Looking at a stack trace via CrossWind, you will see two or more of your application's tasks waiting in semaphore code within dosFs. The patch for this problem is under **SPR 33221** at Wind River Systems. There are several SPR numbers at Wind River Systems that refer to this particular problem.

The third problem is that all tasks will hang on a dosFs semaphore. You should look at **SPR 72063** in the Wind River Systems' Support pages for a more detailed description of this problem.

- **Are there any filesystems I cannot use?**

Currently both the Target Server File System (TSFS) and NFS are not able to be used.

The Target Server File System (TSFS) uses the netDrv driver. This driver does not support any ioctl that allows flushing to the disk, nor does it allow renaming of files via FIORENAME. The NFS file system uses nfsDrv and that driver does not support FIORENAME and cannot be used with Berkeley DB.

- **What VxWorks primitives are used for mutual exclusion in Berkeley DB?**

Mutexes inside of Berkeley DB use the basic binary semaphores in VxWorks. The mutexes are created using the FIFO queue type.

- **What are the implications of VxWorks' mutex implementation using microkernel resources?**

On VxWorks, the semaphore primitives implementing mutexes consume system resources. Therefore, if an application unexpectedly fails, those resources could leak. Berkeley DB solves this problem by always allocating mutexes in the persistent shared memory regions. Then, if an application fails, running recovery or explicitly removing the database environment by calling the `DB_ENV->remove()` method will allow Berkeley DB to release those previously held mutex resources. If an application specifies the `DB_PRIVATE` flag (choosing not to use persistent shared memory), and then fails, mutexes allocated in that private memory may leak their underlying system resources. Therefore, the `DB_ENV->open()` flag should be used with caution on VxWorks.

---

# Chapter 8. Upgrading from previous versions of Berkeley DB

## Library version information

Each release of the Berkeley DB library has a major version number, a minor version number, and a patch number.

The major version number changes only when major portions of the Berkeley DB functionality have been changed. In this case, it may be necessary to significantly modify applications in order to upgrade them to use the new version of the library.

The minor version number changes when Berkeley DB interfaces have changed, and the new release is not entirely backward-compatible with previous releases. To upgrade applications to the new version, they must be recompiled and potentially, minor modifications made (for example, the order of arguments to a function might have changed).

The patch number changes on each release. If only the patch number has changed in a release, applications do not need to be recompiled, and they can be upgraded to the new version by installing the new version of a shared library or by relinking the application to the new version of a static library.

Internal Berkeley DB interfaces may change at any time and during any release, without warning. This means that the library must be entirely recompiled and reinstalled when upgrading to new releases of the library because there is no guarantee that modules from the current version of the library will interact correctly with modules from a previous release.

To retrieve the Berkeley DB version information, applications should use the `DB_ENV->version()` function. In addition to the previous information, the `DB_ENV->version()` function returns a string encapsulating the version information, suitable for display to a user.

## Upgrading Berkeley DB installations

The following information describes the general process of upgrading Berkeley DB installations. There are four areas to be considered when upgrading Berkeley DB applications and database environments: the application API, the database environment's region files, the underlying database formats, and, in the case of transactional database environments, the log files. The upgrade procedures required depend on whether or not the release is a major or minor release (in which either the major or minor number of the version changed), or a patch release (in which only the patch number in the version changed). Berkeley DB major and minor releases may optionally include changes in all four areas, that is, the application API, region files, database formats, and log files may not be backward-compatible with previous releases.

Each Berkeley DB major or minor release has information in this chapter of the Reference Guide, describing how to upgrade to the new release. The section describes any API changes made in the release. Application maintainers should review the API changes and update their applications as necessary before recompiling with the new release. In addition, each

section includes a page specifying whether the log file format or database formats changed in non-backward-compatible ways as part of the release. Because there are several underlying Berkeley DB database formats, and they do not all necessarily change in the same release, changes to a database format in a release may not affect any particular application. Further, database and log file formats may have changed but be entirely backward-compatible, in which case no upgrade will be necessary.

A Berkeley DB patch release will never modify the API, regions, log files, or database formats in incompatible ways, and so applications need only be relinked (or, in the case of a shared library, pointed at the new version of the shared library) to upgrade to a new release. Note that internal Berkeley DB interfaces may change at any time and in any release (including patch releases) without warning. This means the library must be entirely recompiled and reinstalled when upgrading to new releases of the library because there is no guarantee that modules from one version of the library will interact correctly with modules from another release. We recommend using the same compiler release when building patch releases as was used to build the original release; in the default configuration, the Berkeley DB library shares data structures from underlying shared memory between threads of control, and should the compiler re-order fields or otherwise change those data structures between the two builds, errors may result.

If the release is a patch release, do the following:

1. Shut down the old version of the application.
2. Install the new version of the application by relinking or installing a new version of the Berkeley DB shared library.
3. Restart the application.

Otherwise, if the application **does not** have a Berkeley DB transactional environment, the application may be installed in the field using the following steps:

1. Shut down the old version of the application.
2. Remove any Berkeley DB environment using the `DB_ENV->remove()` method or an appropriate system utility.
3. Recompile and install the new version of the application.
4. If necessary, upgrade the application's databases. See Database upgrade for more information.
5. Restart the application.

Otherwise, if the application has a Berkeley DB transactional environment, but neither the log file nor database formats need upgrading, the application may be installed in the field using the following steps:

1. Shut down the old version of the application.
2. Run recovery on the database environment using the `DB_ENV->open()` method or the `db_recover` utility.

3. Remove any Berkeley DB environment using the `DB_ENV->remove()` method or an appropriate system utility.
4. Recompile and install the new version of the application.
5. Restart the application.

If the application has a Berkeley DB transactional environment, and the log files need upgrading but the databases do not, the application may be installed in the field using the following steps:

1. Shut down the old version of the application.
2. Still using the old version of Berkeley DB, run recovery on the database environment using the `DB_ENV->open()` method, or the `db_recover` utility.
3. If you used the `DB_ENV->open()` method to run recovery, make sure that the Berkeley DB environment is removed using the `DB_ENV->remove()` method or an appropriate system utility.
4. Archive the database environment for catastrophic recovery. See Database and log file archival for more information.
5. Recompile and install the new version of the application.
6. Force a checkpoint using the `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` method or the `db_checkpoint` utility. If you use the `db_checkpoint` utility, make sure to use the new version of the utility; that is, the version that came with the release of Berkeley DB to which you are upgrading.
7. Remove unnecessary log files from the environment using the `-d` option on the `db_archive` utility, or from an application which calls the `DB_ENV->log_archive()` method with the `DB_ARCH_REMOVE` flag.

Note that if you are upgrading a replicated application, then you should *not* perform this step until all of the replication sites have been upgraded to the current release level. If you run this site before all your sites are upgraded, then errors can occur in your replication activities because important version information might be lost.

8. Restart the application.

Otherwise, if the application has a Berkeley DB transactional environment and the databases need upgrading, the application may be installed in the field using the following steps:

1. Shut down the old version of the application.
2. Still using the old version of Berkeley DB, run recovery on the database environment using the `DB_ENV->open()` method, or the `db_recover` utility.
3. If you used the `DB_ENV->open()` method to run recovery, make sure that the Berkeley DB environment is removed using the `DB_ENV->remove()` method or an appropriate system utility.

4. Archive the database environment for catastrophic recovery. See Database and log file archival for more information.
5. Recompile and install the new version of the application.
6. Upgrade the application's databases. See Database upgrade for more information.
7. Archive the database for catastrophic recovery again (using different media than before, of course). Note: This archival is not strictly necessary. However, if you have to perform catastrophic recovery after restarting the application, that recovery must be done based on the last archive you have made. If you make this second archive, you can use it as the basis of that catastrophic recovery. If you do not make this second archive, you have to use the archive you made in step 4 as the basis of your recovery, and you have to do a full upgrade on it before you can apply log files created after the upgrade to it.
8. Force a checkpoint using the `DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()` method or the `db_checkpoint` utility. If you use the `db_checkpoint` utility, make sure to use the new version of the utility; that is, the version that came with the release of Berkeley DB to which you are upgrading.
9. Remove unnecessary log files from the environment using the `-d` option on the `db_archive` utility, or from an application which calls the `DB_ENV->log_archive()` method with the `DB_ARCH_REMOVE` flag.

Note that if you are upgrading a replicated application, then you should *not* perform this step until all of the replication sites have been upgraded to the current release level. If you run this site before all your sites are upgraded, then errors can occur in your replication activities because important version information might be lost.

10. Restart the application.

Finally, Berkeley DB supports the live upgrade of a replication group, by allowing mixed version operation (replication sites running at the newer software version can inter-operate with older version sites). All client sites must be upgraded first; the master site must be upgraded last. In other words, at all times the master must be running the lowest version of Berkeley DB. To upgrade a replication group, you must:

1. Bring all clients up to date with the master (that is, all clients must be brought up to the most current log record as measured by the master's log sequence number (LSN)).
2. Perform the upgrade procedures described previously on each of the individual database environments that are part of the replication group. Each individual client may be upgraded and restarted to join the replication group.
3. Shut down the master site and upgrade that site last.

During live replication upgrade, while sites are running at different versions, adding new (empty) clients to the replication group is not allowed. Those empty client environments must be added after the entire group is upgraded.

Also, all removal of log files must be suspended throughout this entire procedure, so that there is no chance of a client needing internal initialization.

Alternatively, it may be simpler to discard the contents of all of the client database environments, upgrade the master database environment, and then re-add all of the clients to the replication group using the standard replication procedures for new sites.

---

# Chapter 9. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.8 applications to Berkeley DB 11gR2

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.8 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 11g Release 2 interfaces. (Library version 11.2.5.0). This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## db\_sql Renamed to db\_sql\_codegen

The db\_sql utility is now called db\_sql\_codegen. This command line utility is not built by default. To build db\_sql\_codegen, specify `--enable-sql_codegen` when configuring Berkeley DB.

## DB\_REP\_CONF\_NOAUTOINIT Replaced

In this release, the DB\_REP\_CONF\_NOAUTOINIT flag is replaced by the DB\_REP\_CONF\_AUTOINIT flag. This option is ON by default. To turn off automatic internal initialization, call the DB\_ENV->rep\_set\_config method with the **which** parameter set to DB\_REP\_CONF\_AUTOINIT and the **onoff** parameter set to zero.

## Support for Multiple Client-to-Client Peers

A Berkeley DB Replication Manager application can now designate one or more remote sites (called its "peers") to receive client-to-client requests.

In previous releases, there could be only one peer at a time. If you called the DB\_ENV->repmgr\_add\_remote\_site method specifying site "A" as a peer and you made another call specifying site "B" as a peer, site "B" would become the only peer, and site "A" would no longer be a peer.

Starting with Berkeley DB 11gR2, the same sequence of calls results in both site "A" and site "B" being possible peers. Replication Manager may select any of a site's possible peers to use for client-to-client requests. If the first peer that the Replication Manager selects cannot be used (for example, it is unavailable or it is the current master), Replication Manager attempts to use a different peer if there is more than one peer.

To get the pre-11gR2 peer behavior in this example, you must make an additional call to the DB\_ENV->repmgr\_add\_remote\_site method, specifying site "A" and a flag value that excludes the DB\_REPMGR\_PEER bit value to remove site "A" as a possible peer.

## Cryptography Support

In this release, the configuration options, `--disable-cryptography` and `--enable-cryptography` are deprecated. `--disable-cryptography` is replaced by `--with-cryptography=no` and `--enable-cryptography` is replaced by `--with-cryptography=yes`.



To build Berkeley DB with support for cryptography, enter `--with-cryptography=yes` as an argument to configure instead of `--enable-cryptography`.

To build Berkeley DB without support for cryptography, enter `--with-cryptography=no` as an argument to configure instead of `--disable-cryptography`.

Berkeley DB now supports encryption using Intel's Performance Primitive (IPP) on Linux. To build Berkeley DB with support for cryptography using Intel's Performance Primitive (IPP) library, enter `--with-cryptography=ipp` as an argument to configure.

Note: The `--with-cryptography=ipp` argument works only on Linux.

## DB\_NOSYNC Flag to Flush Files

Applications must now pass the `DB_NOSYNC` flag to the methods `DB->remove`, `DB->rename`, `DB_ENV->dbremove`, and `DB_ENV->dbrename`, to avoid a multi-database file to be flushed from cache. This flag is applicable if you have created the database handle in a non-transactional environment.

By default, all non-transactional database remove/rename operations cause data to be synced to disk. This can now be overridden using the `DB_NOSYNC` flag so that files can be accessed outside the environment after the database handles are closed.

## Dropped Support

Berkeley DB no longer supports Visual Studio 6.0. The earliest version supported is Visual Studio 2005. The build files for Windows Visual Studio 6.0 are removed.

Berkeley DB no longer supports Win9X, Windows Me (Millennium edition), and Windows NT 4.0. The minimum supported windows platform is Windows 2000.

## Changing Stack Size

Prior to the 11gR2 release, Berkeley DB limited the stack size for threads it created using the POSIX thread API to 128 KB for 32-bit platforms and 256 KB for 64-bit platforms. In this release, the system default stack size is used unless you run the Berkeley DB configure script with the `--with-stacksize=SIZE` argument to override the default.

## Berkeley DB 11g Release 2 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes

1. The log file format changed in 11gR2.

### New Features

1. Replication Manager sites can specify one or more possible client-to-client peers. [#14776]
2. Added resource management feature in all Berkeley DB APIs to automatically manage cursor and database handles by closing them when they are not required, if they are not yet closed. [#16188]

3. Added a SQL interface to the Berkeley DB library. The interface is based on - and a drop-in-replacement for - the SQLite API. It can be accessed via a command line utility, a C API, or existing APIs built for SQLite. [#16809]
4. Added hash databases support to the DB->compact interface. [#16936]
5. Renamed the "db\_sql" utility to "db\_sql\_codegen". This utility is not built by default. To build this utility, enter --enable-sql\_codegen as an argument to configure. [#18265]
6. Added transactional support in db\_sql\_codegen utility. Specify TRANSACTIONAL or NONTRANSACTIONAL in hint comments in SQL statement, db\_sql\_codegen enable/disable transaction in generated code accordingly. [#17237]
7. Added the feature read-your-writes consistency that allows client application to check, or wait for a specific transaction to be replicated from the master before reading database. [#17323]
8. Added DB log verification feature, accessible via the API and a new utility. This feature can help debugging and analysis. [#17420]
9. Added support for applications to assign master/client role explicitly at any time. Replication Manager can now be configured not to initiate elections. [#17484]
10. Enhanced the DB->compact method so that it can reassign metadata and root pages from subdatabases to lower numbered pages while compacting a database file that contains multiple databases. This feature helps to free the higher numbered pages and truncate the file. [#17554]
11. Added system diagnostic messages that are ON by default. [#17561]
12. Added the feature to assign a priority level to transactions. When resolving a deadlock:
  - if the transactions have differing priority, the lowest priority transaction is aborted
  - if all transactions have the same priority, the same policy that existed before priorities were introduced is used [#17604]
13. Added a feature in which log\_archive uses group-wide information for archiving purposes if Replication Manager is in use. [#17664]
14. Added a feature by which the Replication Manager application clients now automatically request any missing information, even when there is no master transaction activity. [#17665]
15. Added support for sharing logs across mixed-endian systems. [#18032]
16. Added an option to specify the first and last pages to the db\_dump utility. You can do this by providing -F and -L flags to the db\_dump -d option. [#18072]
17. Added Intel Performance Primitive (IPP) AES encryption support. [#18110]
18. Removed support for the configuration option --with-mutex=UNIX/fcntl as of version 4.8. If Berkeley DB was configured to use this type of mutex in an earlier release, switch to a different mutex type or contact Oracle for support. [#18361]

---

## Database Environment Changes

1. Fixed a bug to reflect the correct configuration of the logging subsystem when the DB\_ENV->log\_set\_config method is called with the DB\_LOG\_ZERO flag in a situation where a DB\_ENV handle is open and an environment exists. [#17532]
2. Fixed a bug to prevent memory leak caused when the environment is closed by the named in-memory database in a private database environment which has open named in-memory databases. [#17816]
3. Fixed a race condition in an internal directory-scanning function that returns the ENOENT ("No such file or directory") error, if a file is removed just before a call to stat() or its equivalent. [#17850]

## Access Method Changes

1. Fixed a bug to prevent a page in the hash database from carrying the wrong header information when a group allocation is rolled forward by recovery. [#15414]
2. Improved the sort function for bulk put operations. [#17440]
3. Fixed a bug in the DB->compact method to ensure locking of leaf pages when merging higher level interior nodes or when freeing interior nodes when descending to find a non-zero length key. [#17485][#16466]
4. Fixed a bug to prevent a trap if a cursor is opened or closed when another thread is adjusting cursors due to an update in the same database. [#17602]
5. Fixed a bug that incorrectly lead to the error message "library build did not include support for the Hash access method" [#17672]
6. Fixed a bug to ensure that the DB->exists method accepts the DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT flag. [#17687]
7. In the past, removing a database from a multi-database file that was opened in an environment always caused dirty pages in the file to be flushed from the cache. In this release, there is no implicit flush as part of a DB->remove for handles opened in an environment. Applications that expect the database file to be flushed will need to add an explicit flush. [#17775]
8. Fixed a bug so that the code does not loop if a DB->compact operation processed a 3 or more level non-sorted off page duplicate tree. [#17831]
9. Fixed a bug that could leave pages pinned in the cache if an allocation failed during a DB->compact operation. [#17845]
10. Fixed a bug to ensure sequences are closed when an EntityStore is closed. [#17951]
11. Fixed a bug that prevented retrieval of a non-duplicate record with DB\_GET\_BOTH\_RANGE in hash sorted duplicate db. In a database configured with sorted duplicate support, when the DBcursor->get method is passed the DB\_GET\_BOTH\_RANGE flag, the data item should

be retrieved that is the smallest value greater than or equal to the value provided by the data parameter (as determined by the comparison function). [#17997]

12. Fixed a bug that causes the wrong file to be removed if multiple cascading renames are done in the same transaction. [#18069]
13. Fixed a bug to prevent the DB->compact method specified with the DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT flag from acquiring too many locks. [#18072]
14. Fixed a bug that might cause DB->compact on a DB\_BTREE database to get a spurious read lock on the metadata page. If the database was opened non-transactionally the lock would get left behind. [#18257]
15. Fixed a bug that could lead to btree structure corruption if the DB->compact method ran out of locks [#18361]
16. Fixed a bug that would generate an error if a non-BDB file was used to create a database and the DB\_TRUNCATE flag was specified. [#18373]
17. Fixed a bug that might cause a trap reading uninitialized memory when backing out a merge of a duplicate tree leaf page during DB->compact. [#18461]

## Locking Subsystem Changes

1. Fixed a bug to ensure deadlock detection works even when there are blocked transactions, configured with and without timeouts. [#17555]
2. Fixed a bug to ensure a call to the DB->key\_range method from outside a transaction does not lock pages. [#17930]
3. Fixed a bug that could cause a segmentation fault if the lock manager ran out of mutexes [#18428]

## Logging Subsystem Changes

1. Limited the size of a log record generated by freeing pages from a database, so that it fits in the log file size. [#17313]

## Memory Pool Subsystem Changes

1. Fixed a bug to ensure multiple versions of a buffer are not created when MVCC is not set. [#17495]
2. Fixed a bug to detect if cache size is being set when the cache is not configured. [#17556]
3. Fixed a bug to ensure the error message "unable to allocate space from the buffer cache" generated when there is still some space available, can be cleared by running recovery. [#17630]
4. Fixed a race condition that causes an operation to return EPERM when the buffer cache is nearly filled with pages belonging to recently closed queue extents. [#17840]

5. Fixed a bug that could cause a page needed by a snapshot reader to be overwritten rather than copied when it was freed. [#17973]
6. Enabled set\_mp\_pagesize to be specified in the DB\_CONFIG file. [#18015]
7. Fixed a bug to ensure single-version or obsolete buffers were selected over any intermediate version. [#18114]

## Mutex Subsystem Changes

1. Fixed a bug on HP-UX when specifying --with-mutex=HP/msem\_init during configure. It would generate the error "TAS: mutex not appropriately aligned" at runtime, when initializing the first mutex. [#17489]
2. Fixed a race condition which could cause unnecessary retrying of btree searches when several threads simulatenously attempted to get a shared latch. [#18078]

## Tcl-specific API Changes

1. Fixed a bug in Tcl API to prevent a segmentation fault from occurring when the get\_dbname method is called to get the db name and the db handle is opened without providing either the filename or dbname. [#18037]

## C#-specific API Changes

1. Fixed a bug in C# to prevent a System.AccessViolationException from occurring on Windows7 when trying to open new database. [#18422]
2. Fixed a bug in the C# API to make DB\_COMPACT consistent with \_\_db\_compact in teh C API. [#18246]

## API Changes

1. Added the dbstl\_thread\_exit method to release thread specific resouces on thread exit. [#17595]
2. Fixed the parser to allow configuration API flags set in the DB\_CONFIG file to accept an optional ON/OFF string. The DB\_REP\_CONF\_NOAUTOINIT flag has been removed. It is replaced by DB\_REP\_CONF\_AUTOINIT. However, replication's default behavior remains the same. [#17795]

## Replication Changes

1. Fixed bug where a not-in-sync client could service a peer request. [#18279]
2. Fixed bug where page gaps, once filled, would not immediately request the next page gap it finds. This was already fixed for logs. [#18219]
3. Fixed a bug so that only one thread waits for the meta-page lock during internal initialization and broadcasts out the information rather than all threads waiting. Removed the former retry code. [#17871]

4. Added a feature by which the DB->open method now allows the DB\_CREATE flag on a replication client. It is ignored, but this allows a replication application to make one call that can work on either master or client. It fixes a possible race that could develop in a Replication Manager application if a call to DB->open is made around the same time as a master/client role change. [#15167]
5. The DB\_ENV->repmgr\_site\_list method now returns an indication on whether the site is a client-to-client peer. [#16113]
6. Fixed a bug that could occasionally lead to elections failing to complete. [#17105]
7. Fixed a bug that could cause DB\_ENV->txn\_stat to trap. [#17198]
8. Added a new JOIN\_FAILURE event to notify Replication Manager applications which refuse auto-initialization. [#17319]
9. Fixed a bug where a failed master lease check at a client site causes an ASSERT when processing a master lease grant at the master site. [#17869]
10. Fixed a bug to ensure a second simultaneous call to the DB\_ENV->rep\_elect method does not incorrectly clear a bit flag. [#17875]
11. Fixed a bug in client-side autoremoval of log files. [#17899]
12. Removed the likelihood of dual data streams to enhance network traffic. [#17955]
13. Fixed a bug such that non-txn dup cursors are accounted for in the replication API lockout. [#18080]
14. Fixed a bug to ensure checking for other sync states for the rerequest thread. [#18126]
15. Fixed a bug to avoid getting stuck in an election forever. [#18151]
16. Fixed a bug where using client-to-client synchronization with Master Leases could have resulted in failure of a new master to get initial lease grants from sufficient number of clients, resulting in a master environment panic. [#18254]
17. Fixed a bug which had prevented Replication Manager socket operations from working on HP/UX systems. [#18382]
18. Fixed a bug where starting as a client in multiple threads after receiving dupmaster messages could have resulted in a failure to find a new log file, resulting in a panic. [#18388]
19. The default thread stack size is no longer overridden by default for Berkeley DB threads. [#18383]

## Transaction Subsystem Changes

1. Fixed a bug that caused transactions to deadlock on the mutex in the sequence object. [#17731]

2. Fixed a bug to ensure that the failure checking mechanism reconstructs child transactions correctly when a process dies with active sub-transactions. [#18154]
3. Removed a memory leak during recovery related to a deleted database [#18273]

## Utility Changes

1. Fixed compiler warnings in the db\_sql\_codegen utility. [#17503]
2. Enhanced the db\_recover -v utility to display the message, "No log files found", if no logs are present. [#17504]
3. Modified the db\_verify utility to verify all files instead of aborting on the first failure. [#17513]
4. Modified the db\_verify utility to display a message after verification is completed. [#17545]
5. Fixed a bug in the db\_sql\_codegen utility where the primary key is stored in both key and data fields. Removed it from the data field. [#17925]

## Example Changes

1. Fixed a bug that causes the ex\_txn C# example to hang. [#17376]
2. Fixed Solaris alignment issues in Stl port test code. [#17459]
3. Added GCC 4.4 compatibility support for all examples. [#17584]
4. Added new command line arguments(-h and -d) to the env examples. [#17624]
5. Fixed configuration problems related to running java API tests. [#17625]
6. Updated the bench\_001 example to include bulk testing examples. [#17766]
7. Added a new Stl example to demo advanced feature usage. The Stl test cases referred earlier are replaced by these new examples in the Stl reference document. [#18175]

## Deprecated Features

1. The configuration options --disable-cryptography and --enable-cryptoraphy are being deprecated. [#18110]

## Configuration, Documentation, Sample Apps, Portability and Build Changes

1. Remove build files for Windows Visual Studio 6.0. [#16848]
2. Added an API, DBENV->db\_full\_version, to return db full version.
3. Berkeley DB no longer supports Win9X, Windows Me (Millenium edition) and NT 4.0. The minimum supported windows platform is Win 2k.

4. Berkeley DB no longer supports Visual Studio 6.0. The earliest version supported is Visual Studio 2005.
5. Added "+u1" to CFLAGS for HP ANSI C Compiler on HP-UX(IA64) to fix the alignment issue found with the allocation functions DB->set-alloc and DB\_ENV->set\_alloc. [#17257]
6. Fixed a bug such that the thread local storage (TLS) definition modifier is correctly deduced from the m4 script on all platforms. [#17609][#17713]
7. Fixed a bug such that TLS key is not initialized on platforms which do not support thread local storage (TLS) keywords, such as MAC OSX, and where TLS is implemented using pthread API. [#18001]
8. Fixed a bug to ensure that when using Intel C++ compiler (icpc), the TLS code builds successfully. A stricter criteria is adopted to deduce the TLS keyword, and hence pthread API is more likely to be used to implement TLS. [#18038]
9. Adding new configuration option, --with-cryptography={yes|no|ipp}. Using --with-cryptography=yes, will give equivalent behavior to the old --enable-cryptography option. Using --with-cryptography=no, will give equivalent behavior to the old --disable-cryptography option. Using --with-cryptography=ipp will enable Intel's Performance Primitive (IPP) encryption on linux. [#18110]

## Known Bugs

1. The configure option --with-uniquefilename may cause macro redefinition warnings on platforms where BDB implements parts of the standard C library. These warnings (e.g., "db\_int\_def.h", line 586: warning: macro redefined: strsep) may occur when functions in the "clib" directory are included during configuration. This cosmetic affect does not affect the correct operation of the library. [#17172]
2. A multithreaded application using a private environment and multi-version concurrency control could, on very rare occasions, generate an illegal pointer access error during the final steps of a clean environment shutdown. [#17507]
3. Although rare, it is possible for a partial log record header at the end of a transaction log to be erroneously accepted as if it were valid, causing the error "Illegal record type 0 in log" during recovery. [#17851]
4. It is possible to get the error "unable to allocate space from the buffer cache" when there are disk errors on the freezer files used by multi-version concurrency control . [#17902]
5. Java API does not support partitioning by keys and the C# API doesn't support partitioning. [#18350]
6. If a database is removed from an environment and it was still opened transactionally and recovery is run, then a future recovery that must process that part of the log may fail. [#18459]
7. Replication "bulk transfer" does not work if Berkeley DB is unable to determine, at environment open time, whether the Replication Manager will be used. To work



around this problem, an application using the Replication Manager should call `DB_ENV->repmgr_set_local_site()` before opening the environment. An application using the replication Base API should call `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` before opening the environment. [#18476]

8. The BTree prefix comparison function behaves slightly differently in the C API vs the C# API. In the C# API it returns a signed int and in the C API it returns an unsigned int. This can be a problem if the application needs to save more than  $2^{31}$  bytes.

---

# Chapter 10. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.7 applications to Berkeley DB 4.8

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.7 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.8 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## Registering DPL Secondary Keys

Entity subclasses that define secondary keys must now be registered prior to storing an instance of the class. This can be done in two ways:

- The `EntityModel.registerClass()` method may be called to register the subclass before opening the entity store.
- The `EntityStore.getSubclassIndex()` method may be called to implicitly register the subclass after opening the entity store.

Failure to register the entity subclass will result in an `IllegalArgumentException` the first time an attempt is made to store an instance of the subclass. An exception will not occur if instances of the subclass have previously been stored, which allows existing applications to run unmodified in most cases.

This behavioral change was made to increase reliability. In several cases, registering an entity subclass has been necessary as a workaround. The requirement to register the subclass will ensure that such errors do not occur in deployed applications.

## Minor Change in Behavior of `DB_MPOOLFILE->get`

DB 4.8 introduces some performance enhancements, based on the use of shared/exclusive latches instead of locks in some areas of the internal buffer management code. This change will affect how the `DB_MPOOL` interface handles dirty buffers.

Because of these changes, `DB_MPOOLFILE->get` will now acquire an exclusive latch on the buffer if the `DB_MPOOL_DIRTY` or `DB_MPOOL_EDIT` flags are specified. This could lead to an application deadlock if the application tries to fetch the buffer again, without an intervening `DB_MPOOLFILE->put` call.

If your application uses the `DB_MPOOL` interface, and especially the `DB_MPOOL_DIRTY` and `DB_MPOOL_EDIT` flags, you should review your code to ensure that this behavior change does not cause your application to deadlock.

## Dropped Support for `fcntl` System Calls

Berkeley DB no longer supports mutex implementations based on the `fcntl` system call. If you have been configuring Berkeley DB to use this type of mutex, you need to either switch to a different mutex type or contact the Berkeley DB team for support.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.8 release.

No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.8 release.

The Berkeley DB 4.8 release does not support live replication upgrade from the 4.2 or 4.3 releases, only from the 4.4 and later releases.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.8.28 Change Log

### Changes between 4.8.26 and 4.8.28:

1. Limit the size of a log record generated by freeing pages from a database so it fits in the log file size. [#17313]
2. Fix a bug that could cause a file to be removed if it was both the source and target of two renames within a transaction. [#18069]
3. Modified how we go about selecting a usable buffer in the cache. Place more emphasis on single version and obsolete buffers. [#18114]

### Known bugs in 4.8

1. Sharing logs across mixed-endian systems does not work. [#18032]

### Changes between 4.8.24 and 4.8.26:

1. Fixed a bug where the truncate log record could be too large when freeing too many pages during a compact. [#17313]
2. Fixed a bug where the deadlock detector might not run properly. [#17555]
3. Fixed three bugs related to properly detecting thread local storage for DbStl. [#17609] [#18001] [#18038]
4. Fixed a bug that prevented some of our example code from running correctly in a Windows environment. [#17627]
5. Fixed a bug where a "unable to allocate space from buffer cache" error was improperly generated. [#17630]
6. Fixed a bug where DB->exists() did not accept the DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT flag. [#17687]
7. Fixed a bug where DB\_TXN\_SNAPSHOT was not getting ignored when DB\_MULTIVERSION not set. [#17706]
8. Fixed a bug that prevented callback based partitioning through the Java API. [#17735]

9. Fixed a replication bug where log files were not automatically removed from the client side. [#17899]
10. Fixed a bug where code generated from db\_sql stored the key in both the data and key DBTs. [#17925]
11. Fixed a bug that prevented a sequence from closing properly after the EntityStore closed. [#17951]
12. Fixed a bug where gets fail if the DB\_GET\_BOTH\_FLAG is specified in a hash, sorted duplicates database. [#17997]

### **Changes between 4.8.21 and 4.8.24:**

1. Fixed a bug in the C# API where applications in a 64-bit environment could hang. [#17461]
2. Fixed a bug in MVCC where an exclusive latch was not removed when we couldn't obtain a buffer. [#17479]
3. Fixed a bug where a lock wasn't removed on a non-transactional locker. [#17509]
4. Fixed a bug which could trigger an assertion when performing a B-tree page split and running out of log space or with MVCC enabled. [#17531]
5. Fixed a bug in the repquote example that could cause the application to crash. [#17547]
6. Fixed a couple of bugs when using the GCC 4.4 compiler to build the examples and the dbstl API. [#17504] [#17476]
7. Fixed an incorrect representation of log system configuration info. [#17532]

### **Changes between 4.7 and 4.8.21:**

#### **Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:**

1. The log file format changed in 4.8.

#### **New Features:**

1. Improved scalability and throughput when using BTree databases especially when running with multiple threads that equal or exceed the number of available CPUs.
2. Berkeley DB has added support for C#. In addition to the new C# api, C# specific tests and sample applications were also added. [#16137]
3. Berkeley DB has added an STL API, which is compatible with and very similar to C++ Standard Template Library (STL). Tests and sample applications and documentation were also added. [#16217]
4. Berkeley DB has added database partitioning. BTree or Hash databases may now be partitioned across multiple directories. Partitioned databases can be used to increase

- concurrency and to improve performance by spreading access across disk subsystems. [#15862]
5. Berkeley DB now supports bulk insertion and deletion of data. Similar to the bulk get interface, the bulk put and bulk delete allow the developer to populate a buffer of key-value pairs and then pass it to the BDB library with a single API call.
  6. Berkeley DB now supports compression when using BTree.
  7. Berkeley DB introduces a new utility named `db_sql` which replaces `db_codegen`. Similar to `db_codegen`, `db_sql` accepts an input file with DDL statements and generates a Berkeley DB application using the C API that creates and performs CRUD operations on the defined tables. The developer can then use that code as a basis for further application development.
  8. The Replication Manager now supports shared access to the Master database environment from multiple processes. In earlier versions, multiple process support on the Master required use of the Base Replication API. [#15982]
  9. Foreign Key Support has been added to Berkeley DB.
  10. Several enhancements were made to `DB_REGISTER` & `DB_ENV->failchk()`.
  11. Berkeley now supports 100% in-memory replication.
  12. Berkeley DB now has the ability to compare two cursors for equality. [#16811]

### Database Environment Changes:

1. Fixed a bug that could cause an allocation error while trying to allocate thread tracking information for the `DB_ENV->failcheck` system. [#16300]
2. Fixed a bug that could cause a trap if an environment open failed and `failchk` thread tracking was enabled. [#16770]

### Concurrent Data Store Changes:

None.

### General Access Method Changes:

1. Fixed a bug where doing an insert with secondary indices and the `NOOVERWRITE` flag could corrupt the secondary index. [#15912]
2. Fixed a possible file handle leak that occurred while aborting the create of a database whose metadata page was not initialized. [#16359]
3. Fixed a bug so that we now realloc the filename buffer only if we need it to grow. [#16385] [#16219]
4. Fixed a race freeing a transaction object when using MVCC. [#16381]

5. Added missing get methods for the DB and DB\_ENV classes where there already was a corresponding set method. [#16505]
6. Fixed a bug to now ensure that DB\_STAT\_SUBSYSTEM is distinct from other stat flags. [#16798]
7. Fixed a bug related to updating multiple secondary keys (using DB\_MULTIPLE). [#16885]
8. Fixed a bug so that verify (db->verify, db\_verify) will now report when it cannot read a page rather than just saying the database is bad. [#16916]
9. Fixed a bug that could cause memory corruption if a transaction allocating a page aborted while DB->compact was running on that database. [#16862]
10. Fixed a bug where logging was occurring during remove of an in-memory database when the DB\_TXN\_NOT\_DURABLE flag was set. [#16571]
11. Fixed a bug to remove a race condition during database/file create. [#17020]
12. Fixed a bug where a call to DB->verify and specifying DB\_SALVAGE could leak memory when the call returned. [#17161]
13. Fixed a bug to avoid accessing freed memory during puts on primaries with custom comparators. [#17189]
14. Fixed a bug that could cause old versions of pages to be written over new versions if an existing database is opened with the DB\_TRUNCATE flag. [#17191]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

1. Fixed a bug which could cause DB->compact to fail with DB\_NOTFOUND or DB\_PAGE\_NOTFOUND if the height of the tree was reduced by another thread while compact was active. The bug could also cause a page split to trigger splitting of internal nodes which did not need to be split. [#16192]
2. Fixed a bug that caused Db->compact to loop if run on an empty RECNO database when there were pages in the free list. [#16778]
3. Added a new flag, DB\_OVERWRITE\_DUP, to DB->put and DBC->put. This flag is equivalent to DB\_KEYLAST in almost all cases: the exception is that with sorted duplicates, if a matching key/data pair exists, we overwrite it rather than returning DB\_KEYEXIST. [#16803]

### **Hash Access Method Changes:**

1. Fixed a bug to now force a group allocation that rolls forward to reinit all the pages. Otherwise a previous aborted allocation may change the header. [#15414]
2. Fixed a bug to now return the expected buffer size on a DB\_BUFFER\_SMALL condition. [#16881]

### Queue Access Method Changes:

1. Fixed a bug that would cause the LSN reset functionality to not process queue extents. [#16213]
2. Fixed a bug that prevented a partial put on a queue database with secondaries configured. [#16460]
3. Fixed a bug to now prevent an unpinned page to be returned if a delete from a HASH database deadlocked. [#16371]
4. Fixed a bug that could cause a queue extent to be recreated if an application deleted a record that was already deleted in that extent. [#17004]
5. Added the DB\_CONSUME flag to DB->del and DBC->del to force adjustment of the head of the queue. [#17004]

### Recno Access Method Changes:

1. Fixed a bug which could cause DB->compact of a RECNO database to loop if the number of pages on the free list was reduced by another thread while compact was active. [#16199]
2. Fixed a bug that occurs when deleting from a Recno database and using DB\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED where we could try to downgrade a lock twice. [#16347]
3. Fixed a bug to now disallow passing DB\_DUP and DB\_RECNUM together to \_\_db\_set\_flags. [#16585]

### C-specific API Changes:

1. Add get functions for each set functions of DB and DB\_ENV structures which didn't have one. [#16505]

### C++-specific API Changes:

1. The get and set\_lk\_partitions methods are now available.
2. Add get functions for each set functions of Db and DbEnv classes which didn't have one. [#16505]
3. Fixed a memory leak when using nested transactions. [#16956]

### Java-specific API Changes:

1. Fixed a bug where the replication finer-grained verbose flags were not available in the Java API. [#15419]
2. Fixed a bug in the BTree prefix compression API when called from the Java API. DBTs were not properly initialized. [#16417]
3. Fixed a bug so that LogCursor will work correctly from the Java API. [#16827]

4. Fixed a bug so that position(), limit() and capacity() of ByteBuffers are obeyed by DatabaseEntry objects. [#16982]

## **Direct Persistence Layer (DPL), Bindings and Collections API:**

1. The StoredMap class now implements the standard java.util.concurrent.ConcurrentMap interface. [#15382]
2. Report a meaningful IllegalArgumentException when @Persistent is incorrectly declared on an enum class. Before, the confusing message Persistent class has non-persistent superclass: java.lang.Enum was reported. [#15623]
3. Report a meaningful IllegalArgumentException when @Persistent is incorrectly declared on an interface. Before, a NullPointerException was reported. [#15841]
4. Several validation checks have been added or corrected having to do with entity subclasses, which are @Persistent classes that extend an @Entity class. [#16077]
5. Optimized marshaling for large numbers of embedded objects improving performance. [#16198]
6. The StoredMap class now implements the Java 1.5 ConcurrentMap interface. [#16218]
7. Fix a DPL bug that caused exceptions when using a class Converter for an instance containing non-simple fields. [#16233]
8. Add EntityCursor.setCacheMode and getCacheMode. See the com.sleepycat.je.CacheMode class for more information. [#16239]
9. Fix a bug that prevents evolution of @SecondaryKey information in an entity subclass (a class that extends an @Entity class). [#16253]
10. Report a meaningful IllegalArgumentException when @Persistent or @Entity is incorrectly used on an inner class (a non-static nested class). Before, the confusing message No default constructor was reported. [#16279]
11. Improved the reliability of Entity subclasses that define secondary keys by requiring that they be registered prior to storing an instance of the class. [#16399]
12. Fix a bug that under certain circumstances causes "IllegalArgumentException: Not a key class" when calling EntityStore.getSubclassIndex, EntityStore.getPrimaryConfig, EntityStore.getSecondaryConfig, or PrimaryIndex.put, and a composite key class is used. [#16407]
13. Fixed a bug so that one can now compile DPL in the Java API on Windows. [#16570]
14. The com.sleepycat.collections.TransactionRunner.handleException method has been added to allow overriding the default transaction retry policy. See the javadoc for this method for more information. [#16574]
15. Fix a bug that causes an assertion to fire or a NullPointerException (when assertions are disabled) from the EntityStore constructor. The problem occurs only when the previously



created EntityStore contains an entity with a secondary key definition in which the key name has been overridden and is different than the field name. [#16819]

16. Key cursors have been optimized to significantly reduce I/O when the READ\_UNCOMMITTED isolation mode is used. See EntityIndex.keys for more information. [#16859]
17. Report a meaningful IllegalArgumentException when NULLIFY is used with a @SecondaryKey and the field is a primitive type. Before, the confusing message Key field object may not be null was reported. [#17011]
18. Enum fields may now be used as DPL keys, including primary keys, secondary keys, and fields of composite key classes. Comparators are supported for composite key classes containing enum fields. [#17140]
19. Fix a bug that prevented the use of custom key comparisons (composite key classes that implement Comparable) for secondary keys defined as ONE\_TO\_MANY or MANY\_TO\_MANY. [#17207]
20. The db.jar file now contains a Premain class which enables bytecode enhancement using the JVM instrumentation commands. The built-in proxy classes are also now enhanced in the db.jar file, which enables off-line bytecode enhancement. For more information on DPL bytecode enhancement and how to use both instrumentation and off-line enhancement, please see the com.sleepycat.persist.model.ClassEnhancer javadoc. [#17233]

### **Tcl-specific API Changes:**

1. The mutex API is now available when using Tcl. [#16342]

### **RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:**

- RPC support has been removed from Berkeley DB. [#16785]

### **Replication Changes:**

1. Improved testing of initial conditions for rep and repmgr APIs and added heartbeat timeouts to rep\_get\_timeout. [#14977]
2. Added DB\_REP\_CONF\_INMEM replication configuration flag to store replication information exclusively in-memory without creating any files on-disk. [#15257]
3. Added repmgr support for multi-process shared env [#15982]
4. Fixed a bug where opening a cursor from a database handle failed to check whether the database handle was still fresh. If the database handle had been invalidated by a replication client synchronizing with a new master, it could point to invalid information. [#15990]
5. Fixed a bug so that if LOG\_REQ gets an archived LSN, replication sends VERIFY\_FAIL. [#16004]

6. Added timestamp and process/thread id to replication verbose messages. [#16098]
7. Fixed a bug where, in very rare circumstances, two repmgr sites could connect to each other at the exact same time, the connection attempts "collide" and fail, and the same collision repeats in time synchronization indefinitely. [#16114]
8. Fixed a bug where a missing database file (FILE\_FAIL error condition) can interrupt a client synchronization without restarting it. [#16130]
9. Fixed a bug by adding REP\_F\_INREPSTART flag to prevent racing threads in rep\_start. [#16247]
10. Fixed a bug to not return HOLDELECTION if we are already in the middle of an election. Updated the egen so the election thread will notice. [#16270]
11. Fixed a bug in buffer space computation, which could have led to memory corruption in rare circumstances, when using bulk transfer. [#16357]
12. Fixed a bug that prevented replication clients from opening a sequence. The sequence is opened for read operations only. [#16406]
13. Fixed a bug by removing an assertion about priority in elections. It is not correct because it could have changed by then. Remove unused recover\_gen field. [#16412]
14. Fixed a bug to now ignore a message from client if it is an LSN not recognized in a LOG\_REQ. [#16444]
15. Fixed a bug so that on POSIX systems, repmgr no longer restores default SIGPIPE action upon env close, if it was necessary to change it during start-up. This allows remaining repmgr environments within the same process, if any, to continue operating after one of them is closed. [#16454]
16. After a replication client restarts with recovery, any named in-memory databases are now re-materialized from the rest of the replication group upon synchronization with the master. [#16495]
17. Fixed a bug by adding missing rep\_get\_config flags. [#16527]
18. Instead of sleeping if the bulk buffer is in transmission, return so that we can send as a singleton. [#16537]
19. Fixed a bug by changing \_\_env\_refresh to not hit assert on -private -rep env with an in-memory database. [#16546]
20. Fixed a bug in the Windows implementation of repmgr where a large number of commit threads concurrently awaiting acknowledgments could result in memory corruption, and leaking Win32 Event Objects. [#16548]
21. Fixed a bug by changing repmgr to count a dropped connection when noticing a lacking heartbeat; fixed heartbeat test to check for election, rather than connection drop count, and more reasonable time limit; fixed test to poll until desired result, rather than always sleeping max possible time. [#16550]

22. Fixed "master changes" stat to count when local site becomes master too. [#16562]
23. Fixed a bug where a c2c client would send UPDATE\_REQ to another client [#16592]
24. Removed code to proactively expire leases when we don't get acks. Leases maintain their own LSNs to know. [#16494]
25. Fixed a bug where a client may not sync pages during internal init. [#16671]
26. Fixed a bug where a client that received and skipped a log record from the master during an election, then won the election, could then try to request a copy of the skipped log record. The result was an attempt to send a request to the local site, which is invalid: this could confuse a replication Base API application, or cause the Replication Manager to crash. [#16700]
27. Fixed a bug which could have caused data loss or corruption (at the client only) if a replication client rolled back existing transactions in order to synchronize with a new master, and then crashed/recovered before a subsequent checkpoint operation had been replicated from the master. [#16732]
28. Fixed a bug so that replication now retries on DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED. [#16741]
29. Fixed a potential deadlock in rep\_verify\_fail. [#16779]
30. Fixed a bug so that an application will no longer segv if nsites given was smaller than number of sites that actually exists. [#16825]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

1. The XA Resource Manager has been removed from Berkeley DB. [#6459]

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fixed a bug to prevent unlocking a mutex twice if we ran out of transactional locks. [#16285]
2. Fixed a bug to prevent a segmentation trap in \_\_lock\_open if there were an error during the opening of an environment. [#16307]
3. Fixed a bug to now avoid a deadlock if user defined locks are used only one lock partition is defined. [#16415]
4. Fixed concurrency problems in \_\_dd\_build, \_\_dd\_abort by adding LOCK\_SYSTEM\_LOCK() calls to \_\_dd\_build and \_\_dd\_abort. [16489]
5. Fixed a bug that could cause a panic if a transaction which updated a database that was supporting READ\_UNCOMMITTED readers aborted and it hit a race with a thread running the deadlock detector. [#16490]
6. Fixed a race condition in deadlock detection that could overwrite heap. [#16541]
7. Fixed a bug so that DB\_STAT\_CLEAR now restores the value of st\_partitions. [#16701]

## Logging Subsystem Changes:

1. Fixed a bug so that the header checksum is only ignored when the log is from a previous version [#16281]
2. Fixed a bug by removing a possible race condition with `logc_get(DB_FIRST)` and log archiving. [#16387]
3. Fixed a bug that could cause a recovery failure of a create of a database that was aborted. [#16824]
4. An in-memory database creation has an intermediate phase where we have a semi-open DBP. If we crash in that state, then recovery was failing because it tried to use a partially open database handle. This fix checks for that case, and avoids trying to undo page writes for databases in that interim step. [#17203]

## Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:

1. Fixed a bug that occurred after all open handles on a file are closed. Needed to clear the `TXN_NOT_DURABLE` flag (if set) and mark the file as `DURABLE_UNKNOWN` in the memory pool. [#16091]
2. Fixed a possible race condition between dirtying and freeing a buffer that could result in a panic or corruption. [#16530]
3. Fixed a memory leak where allocated space for temporary file names are not released. [#16956]

## Mutex Subsystem Changes:

1. Fixed a bug when using mutexes for SMP MIPS/Linux systems. [#15914]
2. POSIX mutexes are now the default on Solaris. [#16066]
3. Fixed a bug in mutex allocation with multiple cache regions. [#16178]
4. Fixed MIPS/Linux mutexes in 4.7. [#16209]
5. Fixed a bug that would cause a mutex to be unlocked a second time if we ran out of space while tracking pinned pages. [#16228]
6. Fixed a bug Sparc/GCC when using test-and-set mutexes. They are now aligned on an 8-byte boundary. [#16243]
7. Fixed a bug to now prevent a thread calling `DB_ENV->failcheck` to hang on a mutex held by a dead thread. [#16446]
8. Fixed a bug so that `__db_pthread_mutex_unlock()` now handles the `failchk` case of finding a busy mutex which was owned by a now-dead process. [#16557]
9. Removed support for the mutex implementation based on the "fcntl" system call. Anyone configuring Berkeley DB to use this type of mutex in an earlier release will need to either switch to a different mutex type or contact Oracle for support. [#17470]

## Test Suite Changes

1. Fixed a bug when using failchk(), where a mutex was not released. [#15982]
2. Added a set of basic repmgr tests to run\_std and run\_all. [#16092]
3. Added control wrapper for db\_reptest to test suite. [#16161]
4. Fixed a bug to now skip tests if db\_reptest is not configured. [#16161]
5. Changed name of run\_db\_in\_mem to run\_inmem\_db, and run\_inmem to run\_inmem\_log and made the arg orders consistent. [#16358]
6. Fixed a bug to now clean up stray handles when rep\_verify doesn't work. [#16390]
7. Fixed a bug to avoid db\_reptest passing the wrong flag to repmgr\_start when there is already a master. [#16475]
8. Added new tests for abbreviated internal init. Fixed test not to expect in-memory database to survive recovery. [#16495]
9. Fix a bug, to add page size for txn014 if the default page size is too small. Move files instead of renaming directory for env015 on QNX. [#16627]
10. Added new rep088 test for log truncation integrity. [#16732]
11. Fixed a bug by adding a checkpoint in rep061 to make sure we have messages to process. Otherwise we could hang with client stuck in internal init, and no incoming messages to trigger rerequest. [#16781]

## Transaction Subsystem Changes:

1. Fixed a bug to no longer generate an error if DB\_ENV->set\_flags (DB\_TXN\_NOSYNC) was called after the environment was opened. [#16492]
2. Fixed a bug to remove a potential hang condition in replication os\_yield loops when DB\_REGISTER used with replication by adding PANIC\_CHECKS. [#16502]
3. Fix a bug to now release mutex obtained before special condition returns in \_\_db\_cursor\_int and \_\_txn\_record\_fname. [#16665]
4. Fixed a leak in the transaction region when a snapshot update transaction accesses more than 4 databases. [#16734]
5. Enabled setting of set\_thread\_count via the DB\_CONFIG file. [#16878]
6. Fixed a mutex leak in some corner cases. [#16665]

## Utility Changes:

1. The db\_stat utility with the -RA flags will now print a list of known remote replication flags when using repmgr. [#15484]

2. Restructured DB salvage to walk known leaf pages prior to looping over all db pages. [#16219]
3. Fixed a problem with upgrades to 4.7 on big endian machines. [#16411]
4. Fixed a bug so that now db\_load consistently returns >1 on failure. [#16765]
5. The db\_dump utility now accepts a "-m" flag to dump information from a named in-memory database. [#16896]
6. Fixed a bug that would cause db\_hotbackup to fail if a database file was removed while it was running. [#17234]

### **Configuration, Documentation, Sample Application, Portability and Build Changes:**

1. Fixed a bug to now use the correct Perl include path. [#16058]
2. Updated the version of the Microsoft runtime libraries shipped. [#16058]
3. Upgraded the Visual Studio build files to be based on Visual Studio 8 (2005+). The build is now simplified. Users can still upgrade the Visual Studio 6.0 project files, if they want to use Visual Studio .NET (7.1) [#16108]
4. Expanded the ex\_rep example with checkpoint and log archive threads, deadlock detection, new options for acknowledgment policy and bulk transfer, and use of additional replication features and events. [#16109]
5. Fixed a bug so that optimizations on AIX are re-enabled, avoiding incorrect code generation. [#16141]
6. Removed a few compiler warnings and three type redefinitions when using vxworks and the GNU compiler. [#16341]
7. Fixed a bug on Sparc v9 so that MUTEX\_MEMBER() now uses member\_enter() to get a #storeload barrier rather than just stbar's #storestor. [#16468]
8. Berkeley DB no longer supports Win9X and Windows Me (Millenium edition).
9. Fixed lock\_get and lock\_vec examples from the Java (and C#) API. Updated the Java lock example. [#16506]
10. Fixed a bug to correctly handle the TPC-B history record on 64-bit systems. [#16709]
11. Add STL API to Linux build. Can be enabled via the --enable-stl flag. [#16786]
12. Add STL API to Windows build, by building the db\_stl project in the solution. There are also stl's test and examples projects in this solution. [#16786]
13. Add support to build dll projects for WinCE, in order to enable users to build DB into a dll in addition to a static library. [#16625]

14. Fixed a weakness where several malloc/realloc return values are not checked before use. [#16664]
15. Enabled DB->compact for WinCE. [#15897]
16. HP-UX 10 is no longer supported.

---

# Chapter 11. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.6 applications to Berkeley DB 4.7

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.6 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.7 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## Run-time configuration

In historic Berkeley DB releases, there were separate sleep and yield functions to be configured at run-time using the `db_env_set_func_sleep` and `db_env_set_func_yield` functions. These functions have been merged in the Berkeley DB 4.7 release. The replacement function should always yield the processor, and optionally wait for some period of time before allowing the thread to run again.

Applications using the Berkeley DB run-time configuration interfaces should merge the functionality of their sleep and yield functions into a single configuration function.

In the 4.7 Berkeley DB release, the `db_env_set_func_map` and `db_env_set_func_unmap` functions have been replaced. This change fixes problems where applications using the Berkeley DB run-time configuration interfaces could not open multiple `DB_ENV` class handles for the same database environment in a single application or join existing database environments from within multiple processes.

Applications wanting to replace the Berkeley DB region creation functionality should replace their `db_env_set_func_map` and `db_env_set_func_unmap` calls with a call to the `db_env_set_func_region_map` function. Applications wanting to replace the Berkeley DB region file mapping functionality should replace their `db_env_set_func_map` and `db_env_set_func_unmap` calls with a call to the `db_env_set_func_file_map` function.

## Replication API

The Berkeley DB base replication API `DB_ENV->rep_elect()`, `DB_ENV->rep_get_nsites()`, `DB_ENV->rep_set_nsites()`, `DB_ENV->rep_get_priority()` and `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` methods now take arguments of type `u_int32_t` rather than `int`. Applications may need to change the types of arguments to these methods, or cast arguments to these methods to avoid compiler warnings.

## Tcl API

The Berkeley DB Tcl API does not attempt to avoid evaluating input as Tcl commands. For this reason, it may be dangerous to pass unreviewed user input through the Berkeley DB Tcl API, as the input may subsequently be evaluated as a Tcl command. To minimize the effectiveness of a Tcl injection attack, the Berkeley DB Tcl API in the 4.7 release routine resets process' effective user and group IDs to the real user and group IDs.



## DB\_ENV->set\_intermediate\_dir

Historic releases of Berkeley DB contained an undocumented DB\_ENV method named DB\_ENV->set\_intermediate\_dir, which configured the creation of any intermediate directories needed during recovery. This method has been standardized as the DB\_ENV->set\_intermediate\_dir\_mode() method.

Applications using DB\_ENV->set\_intermediate\_dir should be modified to use the DB\_ENV->set\_intermediate\_dir\_mode() method instead.

## Log configuration

In the Berkeley DB 4.7 release, the logging subsystem is configured using the DB\_ENV->log\_set\_config() method instead of the previously used DB\_ENV->set\_flags() method.

The DB\_ENV->set\_flags() method no longer accepts the flags DB\_DIRECT\_LOG, DB\_DSYNC\_LOG, DB\_LOG\_INMEMORY or DB\_LOG\_AUTOREMOVE. Applications should be modified to use the equivalent flags accepted by the DB\_ENV->log\_set\_config() method.

Previous DB_ENV->set_flags() flag	Replacement DB_ENV->log_set_config() flag
DB_DIRECT_LOG	DB_LOG_DIRECT
DB_DSYNC_LOG	DB_LOG_DSYNC
DB_LOG_INMEMORY	DB_LOG_IN_MEMORY
DB_LOG_AUTOREMOVE	DB_LOG_AUTO_REMOVE

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.7 release.

No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.7 release.

The Berkeley DB 4.7 release does not support live replication upgrade from the 4.2 or 4.3 releases, only from the 4.4 and later releases.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.7.25 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. The log file format changed in 4.7.

### New Features:

1. The lock manager may now be fully partitioned, improving performance on some multi-CPU systems. [#15880]

2. Replication groups are now architecture-neutral, supporting connections between differing architectures (big-endian or little-endian, independent of structure padding). [#15787] [#15840]
3. Java: A new Direct Persistence Layer adds a built-in Plain Old Java Object (POJO)-based persistent object model, which provides support for complex object models without compromises in performance. For an introduction to the Direct Persistence Layer API, see Getting Started with Data Storage. [#15936]
4. Add the DB\_ENV->set\_intermediate\_dir\_mode method to support the creation of intermediate directories needed during recovery. [#15097]
5. The DB\_ENV->failchk method can now abort transactions for threads, which have failed while blocked on a concurrency lock. This significantly decreases the need for database environment recovery after thread of control failure. [#15626]
6. Replication Manager clients now can be configured to monitor the connection to the master using heartbeat messages, in order to promptly discover connection failures. [#15714]
7. The logging system may now be configured to pre-zero log files when they are created, improving performance on some systems. [#15758]

### **Database Environment Changes:**

1. Restructure aborted page allocation handling on systems without an ftruncate system call. This enables the Berkeley DB High Availability product on systems, which do not support ftruncate. [#15602]
2. Fix a bug where closing a database handle after aborting a transaction which included a failed open of that handle could result in application failure. [#15650]
3. Fix minor memory leaks when closing a private database environment. [#15663]
4. Fix a bug leading to a panic of "unpinned page returned" if a cursor was used for a delete multiple times and deadlocked during one of the deletes. [#15944]
5. Optionally signal processes still running in the environment before running recovery. [#15984]

### **Concurrent Data Store Changes:**

None.

### **General Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where closing a database handle after aborting a transaction which included a failed open of that database handle could result in application failure. [#15650]
2. Fix a bug that could cause panic in a database environment configured with POSIX-style thread locking, if a database open failed. [#15662]

3. Fix bug in the DB->compact method which could cause a panic if a thread was about to release a page while another thread was truncating the database file. [#15671]
4. Fix an obscure case of interaction between a cursor scan and delete that was prematurely returning DB\_NOTFOUND. [#15785]
5. Fix a bug in the DB->compact method where if read-uncommitted was configured, a reader reading uncommitted data may see an inconsistent entry between when the compact method detects an error and when it aborts the enclosing transaction. [#15856]
6. Fix a bug in the DB->compact method where a thread of control may fail if two threads are compacting the same section of a Recno database. [#15856]
7. Fix a bug in DB->compact method, avoid an assertion failure when zero pages can be freed. [#15965]
8. Fix a bug return a non-zero error when DB->truncate is called with open cursors. [#15973]
9. Fix a bug add HANDLE\_DEAD checking for DB cursors. [#15990]
10. Fix a bug to now generate errors when DB\_SEQUENCE->stat is called without first opening the sequence. [#15995]
11. Fix a bug to no longer dereference a pointer into a hash structure, when hash functionality is disabled. [#16095]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

None.

### **Hash Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where a database store into a Hash database could self-deadlock in a database environment configured for the Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store product, and with a free-threaded DB\_ENV or DB handle. [#15718]

### **Queue Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that could cause a put or delete of a queue element to return a DB\_NOTGRANTED error, if blocked. [#15933]

### **Recno Access Method Changes:**

1. Expose db\_env\_set\_func\_malloc, db\_env\_set\_func\_realloc, and db\_env\_set\_func\_free through the Windows API for the DB dll. [#16045]

### **C-specific API Changes:**

None.

### **Java-specific API Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where enabling MVCC on a database through the Java API was ignored. [#15644]

2. Fixed memory leak bugs in error message buffering in the Java API. [#15843]
3. Fix a bug where Java SecondaryConfig was not setting SecondaryMultiKeyCreator from the underlying db handle [OTN FORUM]
4. Fix a bug so that getStartupComplete will now return a boolean instead of an int. [#16067]
5. Fix a bug in the Java API, where Berkeley DB would hang on exit when using replication. [#16142]

## Direct Persistence Layer (DPL), Bindings and Collections API:

1. A new Direct Persistence Layer adds a built-in Plain Old Java Object (POJO)-based persistent object model, which provides support for complex object models without compromises in performance. For an introduction to the Direct Persistence Layer API, see Getting Started with Data Storage. [#15936]
2. Fixed a bug in the remove method of the Iterator instances returned by the StoredCollection.iterator method in the collections package. This bug caused ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException in some cases when calling next, previous, hasNext or hasPrevious after calling remove. (Note that this issue does not apply to StoredIterator instances returned by the StoredCollection.storedIterator method.) This bug was reported in this forum thread: <http://forums.oracle.com/forums/thread.jspa?messageID=2187896> [#15858]
3. Fixed a bug in the remove method of the StoredIterator instances returned by StoredCollection.storedIterator method in the collections package. If the sequence of methods next-remove-previous was called, previous would sometimes return the removed record. If the sequence of methods previous-remove-next was called, next would sometimes return the removed record. (Note that this issue does not apply to Iterator instances returned by the StoredCollection.iterator method.) [#15909]
4. Fixed a bug that causes a memory leak for applications where many Environment objects are opened and closed and the CurrentTransaction or TransactionRunner class is used. The problem was reported in this JE Forum thread: <http://forums.oracle.com/forums/thread.jspa?messageID=1782659> [#15444]
5. Added StoredContainer.areKeyRangesAllowed method. Key ranges and the methods in SortedMap and SortedSet such as subMap and subSet are now explicitly disallowed for RECNO and QUEUE databases -- they are only supported for BTREE databases. Before, using key ranges in a RECNO or QUEUE database did not work, but was not explicitly prohibited in the Collections API. [#15936]

## Tcl-specific API Changes:

1. The Berkeley DB Tcl API does not attempt to avoid evaluating input as Tcl commands. For this reason, it may be dangerous to pass unreviewed user input through the Berkeley DB Tcl API, as the input may subsequently be evaluated as a Tcl command. To minimize the effectiveness of a Tcl injection attack, the Berkeley DB Tcl API in the 4.7 release routine resets process' effective user and group IDs to the real user and group IDs. [#15597]

## RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:

None.

## Replication Changes:

1. Fix a bug where a master failure resulted in multiple attempts to perform a "fast election"; subsequent elections, when necessary, now use the normal nsites value. [#15099]
2. Replication performance enhancements to speed up failover. [#15490]
3. Fix a bug where replication could self-block in a database environment configured for in-memory logging. [#15503]
4. Fix a bug where replication would attempt to read log file version numbers in a database configured for in-memory logging. [#15503]
5. Fix a bug where log files were not removed during client initialization in a database configured for in-memory logging. [#15503]
6. The 4.7 release no longer supports live replication upgrade from the 4.2 or 4.3 releases, only from the 4.4 and later releases. [#15602]
7. Fix a bug where replication could re-request missing records on every arriving record. [#15629]
8. Change the DB\_ENV->rep\_set\_request method to use time, not the number of messages, when re-requesting missed messages on a replication client. [#15629]
9. Fix a minor memory leak on the master when updating a client during internal initialization. [#15634]
10. Fix a bug where a client error when syncing with a new replication group master could result in an inability to ever re-join the group. [#15648]
11. Change dbenv->rep\_set\_request to use time-based values instead of counters. [#15682]
12. Fix a bug where a LOCK\_NOTGRANTED error could be returned from the DB\_ENV->rep\_process\_message method, instead of being handled internally by replication. [#15685]
13. Fix a bug where the Replication Manager would reject a fresh connection from a remote site that had crashed and restarted, displaying the message: "redundant incoming connection will be ignored". [#15731]
14. The Replication Manager now supports dynamic negotiation of the best available wire protocol version, on a per-connection basis. [#15783]
15. Fix a bug, which could lead to slow performance of internal initialization under the Replication Manager, as evidenced by "queue limit exceeded" messages in verbose replication diagnostic output. [#15788]

16. Fix a bug where replication control message were not portable between replication clients with different endian architectures. [#15793]
17. Add a configuration option to turn off Replication Manager's special handling of elections in 2-site groups. [#15873]
18. Fix a bug making it impossible to call replicationManagerAddRemoteSite in the Java API after having called replicationManagerStart. [#15875]
19. Fix a bug where the DB\_EVENT\_REP\_STARTUPDONE event could be triggered too early. [#15887]
20. Fix a bug where the rcvd\_ts timestamp is reset when the user just changes the threshold. [#15895]
21. Fix a bug where the master in a 2-site replication group might wait for client acknowledgement, even when there was no client connected. [#15927]
22. Fix a bug, clean up and restart internal init if master log is gone. [#16006]
23. Fix a bug, ignore page messages that are from an old internal init. [#16075] [#16059]
24. Fix a bug where checkpoint records do not indicate a database was a named in-memory database. [#16076]
25. Fix a bug with in-memory replication, where we returned with the log region mutex held in an error path, leading to self-deadlock. [#16088]
26. Fix a bug which causes the DB\_REP\_CHECKPOINT\_DELAY setting in rep\_set\_timeout() to be interpreted in seconds, rather than microseconds. [#16153]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where the DB\_ENV->failchk method and replication in general could fail in database environments configured for XA. [#15654]

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug causing a lock or transaction timeout to not be set properly after the first timeout triggers on a particular lock id. [#15847]
2. Fix a bug that would cause a trap if DB\_ENV->lock\_id\_free was passed an invalid locker id. [#16005]
3. Fix a bug when thread tracking is enabled where an attempt is made to release a mutex that is not lock. [#16011]

### **Logging Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug, handle zero-length log records doing HA sync with in-memory logs. [#15838]
2. Fix a bug that could cause DB\_ENV->failcheck to leak log region memory. [#15925]

3. Fix a bug where the abort of a transaction that opened a database could leak log region memory. [#15953]
4. Fix a bug that could leak memory in the DB\_ENV->log\_archive interface if a log file was not found. [#16013]

### Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix multiple MVCC bugs including a race, which could *result in incorrect data being returned* to the application. [#15653]
2. Fixed a bug that left an active file in the buffer pool after a database create was aborted. [#15918]
3. Fix a bug where there could be uneven distribution of pages if a single database and multiple cache regions are configured. [#16015]
4. Fix a bug where DB\_MPOOLFILE->set\_maxsize was dropping the wrong mutex after open. [#16050]

### Mutex Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug where mutex contention in database environments configured for hybrid mutex support could result in performance degradation. [#15646]
2. Set the DB\_MUTEX\_PROCESS\_ONLY flag on all mutexes in private environments, they can't be shared and so we can use the faster, intra-process only mutex implementations [#16025]
3. Fix a bug so that mutexes are now removed from the environment signature if mutexes are disabled. [#16042]

### Transaction Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug that could cause a checkpoint to selfblock attempting to flush a file, when the file handle was closed by another thread during the flush. [#15692]
2. Fix a bug that could cause DB\_ENV->failcheck to hang if there were pending prepared transactions in the environment. [#15925]
3. Prepared transactions will now use the sync setting from the environment. Default to flushing the log on commit (was nosync). [#15995]
4. If \_\_txn\_getactive fails, we now return with the log region mutex held. This is not a bus since \_\_txn\_getactive cannot really fail. [#16088]

### Utility Changes:

1. Update db\_stat with -x option for mutex stats
2. Fix an incorrect assumption about buffer size when getting an overflow page in db\_verify. [#16064]

## Configuration, Documentation, Sample Application, Portability and Build Changes:

1. Fix an installation bug where the Berkeley DB PHP header file was not installed in the correct place.
2. Merge the run-time configuration sleep and yield functions. [#15037]
3. Fix Handle\_DEAD and other expected replication errors in the C++ sample application ReqQuoteExample.cpp. [15568]
4. Add support for monotonic timers. [#15670]
5. Fix bugs where applications using the db\_env\_func\_map and db\_env\_func\_unmap run-time configuration functions could not join existing database environments, or open multiple DB\_ENV handles for a single environment. [#15930]
6. Add documentation about building Berkeley DB for VxWorks 6.x.
7. Remove the HAVE\_FINE\_GRAINED\_LOCK\_MANAGER flag, it is obsolete in 4.7.
8. Fix a bug in ex\_rep, add a missing break which could cause a segment fault.
9. Fix build warnings from 64 bit Windows build. [#16029]
10. Fix an alignment bug on ARM Linux. Force the assignment to use memcpy. [#16125]
11. Fix a bug in the Windows specific code of ex\_sequence.c, where there was an invalide printf specifier. [#16131]
12. Improve the timer in ex\_tpcb to use high resolution timers. [#16154]
13. Mention in the documentation that env->open() requires DB\_THREAD to be specified when using repmgr. [#16163]
14. Disable support for mmap on Windows CE. The only affect is that we do not attempt to mmap small read only databases into the mpool. [#16169]



---

# Chapter 12. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.5 applications to Berkeley DB 4.6

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.5 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.6 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## C API cursor handle method names

In the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, the C API DBC handle methods have been renamed for consistency with the C++ and Java APIs. The change is the removal of the leading "c\_" from the names, as follows:

**DBC->c\_close**  
Renamed DBC->close

**DBC->c\_count**  
Renamed DBC->count

**DBC->c\_del**  
Renamed DBC->del

**DBC->c\_dup**  
Renamed DBC->dup

**DBC->c\_get**  
Renamed DBC->get

**DBC->c\_pget**  
Renamed DBC->pget

**DBC->c\_put**  
Renamed DBC->put

The old DBC method names are deprecated but will continue to work for some number of future releases.

## DB\_MPOOLFILE->put

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()` method takes a new parameter in the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, a page priority. This parameter allows applications to specify the page's priority when returning the page to the cache.

Applications calling the `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()` method can upgrade by adding a `DB_PRIORITY_UNCHANGED` parameter to their calls to the `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()` method. This will result in no change in the application's behavior.

## B\_MPOOLFILE->set

The `DB_MPOOLFILE->set` method has been removed from the Berkeley DB 4.6 release. Applications calling this method can upgrade by removing all calls to the method. This will result in no change in the application's behavior.

## Replication Events

It is now guaranteed the `DB_EVENT_REP_STARTUPDONE` event will be presented to the application after the corresponding `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event, even in the face of extreme thread-scheduling anomalies. (In previous releases, if the thread processing the `NEWMASTER` message was starved, and `STARTUPDONE` occurred soon after, the order might have been reversed.)

In addition, the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event is now presented to all types of replication applications: users of either the Replication Framework or the Base Replication API. In both cases, the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event always means that a site other than the local environment has become master.

The `envid` parameter to `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` has been changed to be of type "int" rather than "int \*\*", and the environment ID of a new master is presented to the application along with the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event. Replication applications should be modified to use the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event to determine the ID of the new master.

The `envid` parameter has been removed from the `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` method and a new event type has been added. The `DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTED` event is presented to the application at the site which wins an election. In the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, the normal result of a successful election is either the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` event (with the winner's environment ID), or the `DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTED` event. Only one of the two events will ever be delivered.

The `DB_REP_NEWMASTER` return code has been removed from the `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` method. Replication applications should be modified to use the `DB_EVENT_REP_NEWMASTER` and `DB_EVENT_REP_ELECTED` events to determine the existence of a new master.

## DB\_REP\_FULL\_ELECTION

The `DB_REP_FULL_ELECTION` flag historically specified to the `DB_ENV->repmgr_start()` method has been removed from the 4.6 release.

In the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, a simpler and more flexible implementation of this functionality is available. Applications needing to configure the first election of a replication group differently from subsequent elections should use the `DB_REP_FULL_ELECTION_TIMEOUT` flag to the `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` method to specify a different timeout for the first election.

## Verbose Output

When an error occurs in the Berkeley DB library, an exception is thrown or an error return value is returned by the interface. In some cases, however, the exception or returned value may be insufficient to completely describe the cause of the error, especially during initial application debugging. Applications can configure Berkeley DB for verbose messages to be output when an error occurs, but it's a common cause of confusion for new users that no verbose messages are available by default.

In the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, verbose messages are configured by default. For the C and C++ APIs, this means the default configuration when applications first create DB or DB\_ENV handles is as if the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` or `DB->set_errfile()` methods were called with the standard error output (`stderr`) specified as the `FILE *` argument. Applications wanting no output at all can turn off this default configuration by calling the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` or `DB->set_errfile()` methods with `NULL` as the `FILE *` argument. Additionally, explicitly configuring the error output channel using any of the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()`, `DB_ENV->set_errcall()`, `DbEnv::set_error_stream()` or `Db::set_error_stream()` methods will also turn off this default output for the application.

Applications which configure Berkeley DB with any error output channel should not require any changes.

Applications which depend on having no output from the Berkeley DB library by default, should be changed to call the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` or `DB->set_errfile()` methods with `NULL` as the `FILE *` argument.

## DB\_VERB\_REPLICATION

The `DB_VERB_REPLICATION` flag no longer requires the Berkeley DB library be built with the `--enable-diagnostic` configuration option to output additional replication logging information.

## Windows 9X

Berkeley DB no longer supports process-shared database environments on Windows 9X platforms; the `DB_PRIVATE` flag must always be specified to the `DB_ENV->open()` method.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.6 release.

The format of Hash database pages was changed in the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, and items are now stored in sorted order. **The format changes are entirely backward-compatible, and no database upgrades are needed.** However, upgrading existing databases can offer significant performance improvements. Note that databases created using the 4.6 release may not be usable with earlier Berkeley DB releases.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.6.21 Change Log

### 4.6.21 Patches:

1. Fix a bug where mutex contention in database environments configured for hybrid mutex support could result in performance degradation. [#15646]
2. Fix a bug where closing a database handle after aborting a transaction which included a failed open of that database handle could result in application failure. [#15650]

3. Fix multiple MVCC bugs including a race which *could result in incorrect data being returned* to the application. [#15653]
4. Fix a bug where a database store into a Hash database could self-deadlock in a database environment configured for the Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store product and with a free-threaded DB\_ENV or DB handle. [#15718]
5. Fix an installation bug where Berkeley DB's PHP header file was not installed in the correct place.

#### 4.6.19 Patches

1. Fix a bug where a client in a two-site replication group could become master, after failure of the existing master, even if the client had priority 0. [#15388]
2. Fix a bug where 32-bit builds on 64-bit machines could immediately core dump because of a misaligned access. [#15643]
3. Fix a bug where attempts to configure a database for MVCC in the Java API were silently ignored. [#15644]
4. Fix a bug where database environments configured for replication and verbose output could drop core. [#15651]

#### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. The on-disk log format has changed.
2. The format of Hash database pages was changed in the Berkeley DB 4.6 release, and items are now stored in sorted order. *The format changes are entirely backward-compatible, and no database upgrades are needed.* However, upgrading existing databases can offer significant performance improvements. Note that databases created using the 4.6 release may not be usable with earlier Berkeley DB releases.

#### New Features:

1. Add support for a cursor DB\_PREV\_DUP flag, which moves the cursor to the previous key/data pair if it's a duplicate of the current key/data pair. [#4801]
2. Add the ability to set cache page priority on a database or cursor handle. [#11886]
3. Add verbose output tracing for filesystem operations. [#13760]
4. Port Berkeley DB to Qualcomm's Binary Runtime Environment for Wireless (BREW). [#14562]
5. Port Berkeley DB to WinCE. [#15312]
6. Port Berkeley DB to S60. [#15371]
7. Add a key\_exists method to the DB handle. [#15374]

8. Applications may now begin processing new transactions while previously prepared, but unresolved, transactions are still pending. [#14754]
9. Significant performance improvements in the Hash access method. [#15017]

### **Database Environment Changes:**

1. Add support to close open file handles in the case of catastrophic database environment failure so applications that do not exit and restart on failure won't leak file handles. [#6538]
2. Replace the Berkeley DB shared memory allocator with a new implementation, intended to decrease the performance drop-off seen in database environments having working sets that are larger than the cache, especially database environments with multiple cache page sizes. [#13122]
3. Fix a bug that would incorrectly cause a thread to appear to be in the Berkeley DB API after a call to db\_create. [#14562]
4. Allow database close prior to resolving all transactions updating the database. [#14785]
5. Fix a bug where the db\_stat utility -Z flag and the statistics method's DB\_STAT\_CLEAR flag could clear mutex statistics too quickly, leading to incorrect values being displayed. [#15032]
6. Fix a bug where removal of a file after an open/close pair spanning the most recent checkpoint log-sequence-numbers made recovery fail. [#15092]
7. Fix a bug that could leave an environment unrecoverable if FTRUNCATE was not set and a roll-forward to a timestamp was interrupted between the truncation of the log and the recording of aborted allocations. [#15108]
8. Fix a bug where recovery of a rename operation could fail if the rename occurred in a directory that no longer existed. [#15119]
9. Fix a bug that could cause recovery to report a "File exists" error if a committed create was partially recovered by a previously failed recovery operation. [#15151]
10. Fix a bug where the DbEnv.get\_thread\_count method implementation was missing from the Berkeley DB 4.5 release. [#15201]
11. Fix a bug where replication operations were not reported properly when the DbEnv.failchk method was called. [#15094]
12. Fixed a bug that caused SEQ->remove not to use a transaction if the sequence was opened on a transactional database handle but no transaction was specified on the call. [#15235]
13. Fix a bug where accesses to the database environment reference count could race, causing the DB\_ENV->remove method to incorrectly remove or not remove a database environment. [#15240]

14. Fix a bug that could cause a recovery failure if a partial record was written near the end of a log file before a crash and then never overwritten after recovery runs and before a log file switch occurs. [#15302]
15. Fix a bug that could fire a diagnostic assertion if an error occurred during a database environment open. [#15309]
16. Fix a bug where memp\_trickle attempts to flush an infinite number of buffers. [#15342]
17. Cause application updates of the DB\_ENV->set\_mp\_max\_write values to affect already running cache flush operations. [#15342]
18. Fix a bug which could cause system hang if a checkpoint happened at the same time as a database file create or rename. [#15346]
19. Fix a bug which could cause application failure if the open of a subdatabase failed while other database opens were happening. [#15346]
20. Fix a bug that could cause recovery to not process a transaction properly if the transaction was started before the transaction IDs were reset but did not put its first record into the log until after the txn\_recycle record. [#15400]
21. Fix a bug that could cause a thread in cache allocation to loop infinitely. [#15406]
22. Fix a bug that could cause recovery to report a Log Sequence Error on systems without the ftruncate system call where a page allocation occurred and the database metadata page was forced out of cache without being marked dirty and then had to be recovered. [#15441]
23. Fix a bug on systems lacking the ftruncate system call, where a page may be improperly linked into the free list if archive recovery was done in multiple steps, that is, applying additional logs to the same databases. [#15557]

### **Concurrent Data Store Changes:**

None.

### **General Access Method Changes:**

1. Add a feature where applications can specify a custom comparison function for the Hash access method [#4109]
2. Open, create, close and removal of non-transactional databases is are longer logged in transactional database environments unless debug logging is enabled. [#8037]
3. Add the ability to set cache page priority on a database or cursor handle. [#11886]
4. fix a bug where the DB\_ENV->fileid\_reset method failed when called on on encrypted or check-summed databases. [#13990]
5. Fix a bug where the DB->fd method failed when called on in-memory databases. [#14157]

6. Fix a bug where an attempt to open a Recno database with a backing file that does not exist could report an error because it couldn't remove a temporary file. [#14160]
7. Reverse a change found in previous releases which disallowed setting "partial" flags on key DBTs for DB and DbCursor put method calls. [#14520]
8. Fix a bug where transactional file operations, such as remove or rename, could leak file handles. [#15222]
9. Fix a bug that could cause the in-memory sorted freelist used by the DB->compact method not to be freed if transaction or lock timeouts were set in the environment. [#15292]
10. Add the DB->get\_multiple method, which returns if the DB handle references a "master" database in the physical file. [#15352]
11. Fix a bug that could cause an DB\_INORDER, DB->get method DB\_CONSUME operation to loop if the Queue database was missing a record due to a rollback by a writer or a non-queue insert in the queue. [#15452]
12. Fix a bug preventing database removal after application or system failure in a database environment configured for in-memory logging. [#15459]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

None.

### **Hash Access Method Changes:**

1. Change the internal format of Hash database pages, storing items in sorted order. There are no externally visible changes, and hash databases using historic on-page formats do not require an explicit upgrade. (However, upgrading existing databases can offer significant performance improvements.) [#15017]
2. Fix a bug preventing LSNs from being reset on hash databases when the databases were configured with a non-standard hash function. [#15567]

### **Queue Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug which could cause a Queue extent file to be incorrectly removed if an empty extent file was being closed by one thread and being updated by another thread (which was using random access operations). [#9101]

### **Recno Access Method Changes:**

None.

### **C++-specific API Changes:**

None.

### **Java-specific API Changes:**

1. Add a feature where an exception is thrown by the Java API, the Berkeley DB error message is now included in the exception object. [#11870]

2. Fix a bug which can cause a JVM crash when doing a partial get operation. [#15143]
3. Fix a bug which prevented the use of Berkeley DB sequences from Java. [#15220]
4. Fix multiple bugs where DBTs were not being copied correctly in the Java replication APIs. [#15223]
5. Add transaction.commitWriteNoSync to the Java API. [#15376]

### Java collections and bind API Changes:

1. Change SerialBinding to use the current thread's context class loader when loading application classes. This allows the JE jar file to be deployed in application servers and other containers as a shared library rather than as an application jar. [#15447]
2. Tuple bindings now support the java.math.BigInteger type. Like other tuple binding values, BigInteger values are sorted in natural integer order by default, without using a custom comparator. For details please see the Javadoc for: com.sleepycat.bind.tuple.TupleInput.readBigInteger com.sleepycat.bind.tuple.TupleOutput.writeBigInteger com.sleepycat.bind.tuple.BigIntegerBinding [#15244]
3. Add tuple binding methods for reading and writing packed int and long values. Packed integer values take less space, but take slightly more processing time to read and write. See: TupleInput.readPackedInt TupleInput.getPackedIntByteLength TupleInput.readPackedLong TupleInput.getPackedLongByteLength TupleOutput.writePackedInt TupleOutput.writePackedLong PackedInteger [#15422]
4. The Collections API has been enhanced so that auto-commit works for the standard Java Iterator.remove(), set() and add() methods. Previously it was necessary to explicitly begin and commit a transaction in order to call these methods, when the underlying Database was transactional. Note that starting a transaction is still necessary when calling these methods if the StoredCollection.storedIterator method is used. [#15401]
5. Fix a bug that causes a memory leak for applications where both of the following are true: many Environment objects are opened and closed, and the CurrentTransaction or TransactionRunner class is used. [#15444]

### Tcl-specific API Changes:

None.

### RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:

None.

### Replication Changes:

1. Fix a bug where transactions could be rolled-back if an existing replication group master was partitioned and unable to participate in an election. [#14752]
2. Add a new event when a replication manager framework master fails to send and confirm receipt by clients of a "permanent" message. [#14775]



3. Fix a race where multiple threads might attempt to process a LOGREADY condition. [#14902]
4. Change the DB\_VERB\_REPLICATION flag to no longer require the Berkeley DB library be built with the --enable-diagnostic configuration option to output additional replication logging information. [#14991]
5. Fix a bug with elections occurring during internal init of a replication client site. [#15057]
6. Fix lockout code to lockout message threads and API separately. Send indication that log requests is for internal init. [#15067]
7. Replication manager changed to retry host-name look-up failures, since they could be caused by transient name server outage. [#15081]
8. Fix a bug which led to memory corruption when the sending of a bulk buffer resulted in an error. [#15100]
9. A throttling limit of 10 megabytes is now set by default in a newly created database environment (see the DbEnv.rep\_set\_limit method). [#15115]
10. Fix a bug in ALL\_REQ handling where master could get a DB\_NOTFOUND. [#15116]
11. Fix a bug which could lead to client sites repeatedly but unproductively calling for an election, when a master site already exists. [#15128]
12. Modify gap processing algorithms so XXX\_MORE messages ask for data beyond what it just processed, not an earlier gap that might exist. [#15136]
13. Fixed a bug in the ex\_rep example application which could cause the last few transactions to disappear when shutting down the sites of the replication group gracefully. [#15162]
14. Fix a bug where if a client crashed during internal init, its database environment would be left in a confused state, making it impossible to synchronize again with the master. [#15177]
15. Fix a bug where election flags are not cleared atomically with the setting of the new master ID. [#15186]
16. Fix a bug which would cause Berkeley DB to crash if an internal init happened when there were no database files at the master. [#15227]
17. It is now guaranteed that the DB\_EVENT\_REP\_STARTUPDONE event will be presented to the application after the corresponding DB\_EVENT\_REP\_NEWMASTER event, even in the face of extreme scheduling anomalies. [#15265]
18. Fix minor memory leaks in the replication manager. [#15239] [#15256]
19. Fix a bug which caused the replication manager to lose track of a failed connection, resulting in the inability to accept a replacement connection. [#15311]
20. Fix a bug where a client starting an election when the rest of the replication group already had an established master could confuse replication management at the other

client sites, leading to failure to properly acknowledge PERM transactions from the master. [#15428]

21. Add support for reporting Replication Manager statistics. [#15430]
22. Fix a bug where a send failure during processing of a request message from a client could erroneously appear to the application as an EPERM system error. [#15436]
23. Client now sets STARTUPDONE at the end of the synchronization phase when it has caught up to the end of the master's transaction log, without requiring ongoing transactions at the master. [#15542]
24. Fix a bug in sleep-time calculation which could cause a Replication Manager failure. [#15552]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

None.

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

1. Change the DB\_ENV->lock\_detect method to return the number of transactions timed out in addition to those were rejected due to deadlock. [#15281]

### **Logging Subsystem Changes:**

None.

### **Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that could cause a checkpoint to hang if a database was closed while the checkpoint was forcing that file to disk and all the pages for that database were replaced in the cache. [#15135]
2. Fix a bug where a system error in closing a file could result in a core dump. [#15137]
3. Fix MVCC statistics counts for private database environments. [#15218]

### **Transaction Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where creating a database with the DB\_TXN\_NOTDURABLE flag set would still write a log record. [#15386]
2. Change transaction checkpoint to wait only for pages being updated during the checkpoint. [#14710]

### **Utility Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that prevented db\_load from handling subdatabase names that were of zero length. [#8204]
2. Fix a bug where the db\_hotbackup utility did not clean out and record the log file numbers in the backup directory when both the -u and -D flags were specified. [#15395]

## Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:

1. Berkeley DB no longer supports process-shared database environments on Windows 9X platforms; the DB\_PRIVATE flag must always be specified to the DB\_ENV->open method. [#13766]
2. Port Berkeley DB to Qualcomm's Binary Runtime Environment for Wireless (BREW). [#14562]
3. Compile SWIG-generated code with the -fno-strict-aliasing flag when using the GNU gcc compiler. [#14953]
4. Changed include files so ENOENT is resolved on Windows. [#15078]
5. Port Berkeley DB to WinCE. [#15312]
6. Port Berkeley DB to S60. [#15371]
7. Add the db\_hotbackup executable to the Windows MSI installer. [#15372]
8. Change the db\_hotbackup utility to use the Berkeley DB library portability layer. [#15415]
9. Re-write the GNU gcc mutex implementation on the x86 platform to avoid compiler errors. [#15461]
10. Fix a bug with non-HFS filesystems under OS X which could affect data durability. [#15501]

---

# Chapter 13. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.4 applications to Berkeley DB 4.5

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.4 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.5 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## deprecated interfaces

Some previously deprecated interfaces were removed from the Berkeley DB 4.5 release:

- The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max` method was removed. This method has been deprecated and undocumented since the Berkeley DB 4.0 release.
- The `DB->stat` method flags `DB_CACHED_COUNT` and `DB_RECORDCOUNT` were removed. These flags have been deprecated and undocumented since the Berkeley DB 4.1 release.
- The `-w` option to the `db_deadlock` utility was removed. This option has been deprecated and undocumented since the Berkeley DB 4.0 release.

## DB->set\_isalive

In previous releases, the function specified to the `DB_ENV->set_isalive()` method did not take a flags parameter. In the Berkeley DB 4.5 release, an additional flags argument has been added: `DB_MUTEX_PROCESS_ONLY`.

Applications configuring an is-alive function should add a flags argument to the function, and change the function to ignore any thread ID and return the status of just the process, when the `DB_MUTEX_PROCESS_ONLY` flag is specified.

## DB\_ENV->rep\_elect

Two of the historic arguments for the `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` method have been moved from the interface to separate methods in order to make them available within the new replication manager framework.

The **priority** parameter should now be explicitly set using the `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` method. To upgrade existing replication applications to the Berkeley DB 4.5 `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` interface, it may be simplest to insert a call to `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` immediately before the existing call to `DB_ENV->rep_elect()`. Alternatively, it may make more sense to add a single call to `DB_ENV->rep_set_priority()` during database environment configuration.

The **timeout** parameter should now be explicitly set using the `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` method. To upgrade existing replication applications to the Berkeley DB 4.5 `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` interface, it may be simplest to insert a call to `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` immediately before the existing call to `DB_ENV->rep_elect()`. Alternatively, it may make

more sense to add a single call to `DB_ENV->rep_set_timeout()` during database environment configuration.

## Replication method naming

The method names `DB_ENV->set_rep_limit`, `DB_ENV->get_rep_limit` and `DB_ENV->set_rep_transport` have been changed to `DB_ENV->rep_set_limit()`, `DB_ENV->rep_get_limit()` and `DB_ENV->rep_set_transport()` in order to be consistent with the other replication method names. That is, the characters "set\_rep" and "get\_rep" have been changed to "rep\_set" and "rep\_get".

Applications should modify the method names, no other change is required.

## Replication events

One of the informational returns from the `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` method found in previous releases of Berkeley DB has been changed to an event. The `DB_REP_STARTUPDONE` return from `DB_ENV->rep_process_message()` is now the `DB_EVENT_REP_STARTUPDONE` value to the `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()` callback.

Applications should update their handling of this event as necessary.

## Memory Pool API

As part of implementing support for multi-version concurrency control, the `DB_MPOOL_DIRTY` flag is now specified to the `DB_MPOOLFILE->get()` instead of `DB_MPOOLFILE->put()`, and the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set` method has been removed. In addition, a new transaction handle parameter has been added to the `DB_MPOOLFILE->get()` method.

The `DB_MPOOL_CLEAN` flag is no longer supported.

Applications which use the memory pool API directly should update to the new API in order to use 4.5.

## DB\_ENV->set\_paniccall

In previous Berkeley DB releases, the `DB_ENV->set_paniccall` and `DB->set_paniccall` methods were used to register a callback function, called if the database environment failed. In the 4.5 release, this functionality has been replaced by a general-purpose event notification callback function, set with the `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()` method. Applications should be updated to replace `DB_ENV->set_paniccall` and `DB->set_paniccall` calls with a call to `DB_ENV->set_event_notify()`. This also requires the callback function itself change, as the callback signatures are different.

The `DB_ENV->set_paniccall` and `DB->set_paniccall` calls are expected to be removed in a future release of Berkeley DB.

## DB->set\_pagesize

In previous releases, when creating a new database in a physical file which already contained databases, it was an error to specify a page size different from the existing databases in the

file. In the Berkeley DB 4.5 release, any page size specified is ignored if the file in which the database is being created already exists.

## Collections API

The changes to the Collections API are compatible with prior releases, with one exception: the Iterator object returned by the `StoredCollection.iterator()` method can no longer be explicitly cast to `StoredIterator` because a different implementation class is now used for iterators. If you depend on the `StoredIterator` class, you must now call `StoredCollection.storedIterator()` instead. Note the `StoredIterator.close(Iterator)` static method is compatible with the new iterator implementation, so no changes are necessary if you are using that method to close iterators.

## --enable-pthread\_self

In previous releases, the `--enable-pthread_self` configuration option was used to force Berkeley DB to use the POSIX pthread `pthread_self` function to identify threads of control (even when Berkeley DB was configured for test-and-set mutexes). In the 4.5 release, the `--enable-pthread_self` option has been replaced with the `--enable-pthread_api` option. This option has the same effect as the previous option, but configures the Berkeley DB build for a POSIX pthread application in other ways (for example, configuring Berkeley DB to use the `pthread_self` function).

## Recno backing text source files

In previous releases of Berkeley DB, Recno access method backing source text files were opened using the ANSI C `fopen` function with the "r" and "w" modes. This caused Windows systems to translate carriage-return and linefeed characters on input and output and could lead to database corruption.

In the current release, Berkeley DB opens the backing source text files using the "rb" and "wb" modes, consequently carriage-return and linefeed characters will not be translated on Windows systems.

Applications using the backing source text file feature on systems where the "r/w" and "rb/wb" modes differ should evaluate their application as part of upgrading to the 4.5 release. There is the possibility that characters have been translated or stripped and the backing source file has been corrupted. (Applications on other systems, for example, POSIX-like systems, should not require any changes related to this issue.)

## Application-specific logging

In previous releases of Berkeley DB, "BEGIN" lines in the XXX.src files used to build application-specific logging support only required a log record number. In the 4.5 release, those lines require a Berkeley DB library version as well. For example, the entry:

```
BEGIN mkdir 10000
```

must now be:

```
BEGIN mkdir 44 10000
```

that is, the version of the Berkeley DB release where the log record was introduced must be included. The version is the major and minor numbers for the Berkeley DB library, with all punctuation removed. For example, Berkeley DB version 4.2 should be 42, version 4.5 should be 45.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.5 release. No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.5 release.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.5.20 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. The on-disk log format has changed.

### New Features:

1. Multi-Version Concurrency Control for the Btree/Recno access methods.
2. A new replication framework with a default TCP/IP setup.
3. Online replication upgrades for high availability replicated 24/7 systems.
4. A new event-style notification.
5. Several enhancements to the Java Collections API including the implementation of the `size()` method.

### Database Environment Changes:

1. Update the `DB_ENV->failchk` method to garbage collect per-process mutexes stranded after unexpected process failure. [#13964]
2. Fix a bug that could cause memory used to track threads for `DB_ENV->failchk` to not be reused when a thread no longer exists. [#14425]
3. Add `set_event_notify` behavior as part of new event notification in Berkeley DB. [#14534]
4. Fix a bug so that we no longer panic on `DB_ENV->close()` if a previous environment close failed to log. This condition will now return an error. [#14693]
5. Created `os_getenv`, removed `clib/getenv`, implemented Windows specific behavior. [#14942]

6. Fix a bug where it was possible to corrupt the DB\_REGISTER information file, making it impossible for Berkeley DB applications to join database environments. [#14998]

### **Concurrent Data Store Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where renaming a subdatabase in a Concurrent Data Store environment could fail. [#14185]

### **General Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that could leave extra unallocated pages at the end of a database file. [#14031]
2. Optimize secondary updates when overwriting primary records. [#14075]
3. Fix a bug to prevent a trap when creating a named in-memory database and there are already temporary files open. [#14133]
4. Fix a bug which caused a trap if the key parameter to DBC->c\_get was omitted with DB\_CURRENT. [#14143]
5. Fix a bug with secondary cursors when the secondary has off-page duplicates. This bug resulted in incorrect primary data being returned. [#14240]
6. Improve performance when removing a subdatabase by not locking every page. [#14366]
7. Fix a bug that would not properly upgrade database files from releases 3.2.9 (and earlier) to releases 4.0 (and greater). [#14461]
8. Fix a bug that could cause a DB\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED get through a secondary index to return DB\_SECONDARY\_CORRUPT. [#14487]
9. Fix a bug so that non-transactional cursor updates of a transactional database will generate an error. [#14519]
10. Add a message when the system panics due to a page in the wrong state at its time of allocation. [#14527]
11. Fix a remove failure when attempting to remove a file that is open in another thread of control. [#14780]
12. Fix a bug where the key was not ignored when doing a cursor put with the DB\_CURRENT flag. [#14988]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

- a. When deleting a page don't check the next key in the parent if we are going to delete the parent too.
- b. Need to check that the tree has not collapsed between dropping a read lock and getting the write lock. If it has collapsed we will fetch the root of the tree.
- c. Fix a case where we fail to lock the next page before reading it.



1. Changed the implementation of internal nodes in btrees so that they no longer share references to overflow pages with leaf nodes. [#10717]
2. Fix a bug that could cause a diagnostic assertion by setting the deleted bit on a record in an internal node. [#13944]
3. Fix three problems in BTREE compaction: [#14238]
4. Fix a bug that could cause the compaction of a Btree with sorted duplicates to fail when attempting to compact an off page duplicate tree if a key could not fit in an internal node. [#14771]
5. Fix a bug that causes a loop if an empty Btree was compacted. [#14493]

### Hash Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug to allow creation of hash pages during truncate recovery. [#14247]

### Queue Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where reads of data items outside the range of the queue were not kept locked to the end of the transaction, breaking serializability. [#13719]
2. Fix a bug that could cause corruption in queue extent files if multiple processes tried to open the same extent at the same time. [#14438]
3. Improve concurrency for in-place updates in queue databases. [#14918]

### Recno Access Method Changes:

None.

### C++-specific API Changes:

1. C++ applications that check the error code in exceptions should note that DbMemoryException has been changed to have the error code DB\_BUFFER\_SMALL rather than ENOMEM, to match the error returned by the C API. DbMemoryException will be thrown when a Dbt is too small to contain data returned by Berkeley DB. When a call to malloc fails, or some other resource is exhausted, a plain DbException will be thrown with error code set to ENOMEM. [#13939]

### Java-specific API Changes:

1. Database.verify may now be called. This method is now static and takes a DatabaseConfig parameter. [#13971]
2. Add DB\_ENV->{fileid\_reset, lsn\_reset} to the public API. [#14076]

### Java collections and bind API Changes:

1. The com.sleepycat.collections package is now fully compatible with the Java Collections framework. [#14732]

### **Tcl-specific API Changes:**

1. Fix a conflicting variable, `syscript.tcl`. [#15051]

### **RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:**

None.

### **Replication Changes:**

1. Fix a bug when running with `DEBUG_ROP` or `DEBUG_WOP`. [#13394]
2. Add live replication upgrade support [#13670]
3. Fix a bug so that client databases are removed at the start of internal initialization. [#14147]
4. Fix a bug in replication internal initialization so that `data_dir` will be handled correctly. Make internal initialization resilient to multiple `data_dir` calls with the same directory. [#14489]
5. Fix a bug in the 4.2 sync-up algorithm that could result in no open files. [#14552]
6. Fix a bug when clients decide to re-request. [#14642]
7. Fix a bug where a PERM bulk buffer could have a zero LSN passed to the application callback. [#14675]
8. Change names of some existing replication API methods as described in "Replication Method Naming" page of the "Upgrading Berkeley DB Applications to Release 4.5" section of Berkeley DB Reference Guide. [#14723]
9. Fix a bug which could cause an election to succeed only after waiting for the timeout to expire, even when all sites responded in a timely manner. The bug was most easily visible in an election between 2 sites. [#14752]
10. Fix a bug where a process could have an old file handle to a log file. [#14797]
11. Fix a bug where a "log\_more" message could be on a log file boundary. [#15034]
12. Fix a bug that could cause log corruption if a database open operation were attempted during a call to `rep_start` in another thread. [#15035]
13. Fix a bug during elections where a `vote2` arrives before its `vote1`. [#15055]
14. Fix a bug to make sure we are a client if sending a `REP_REREQUEST`. [#15066]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

None.

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that could cause a write to hang if `DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED` is enabled and it tries to reacquire a write lock. [#14919]

## Logging Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug so that log headers are now included in the checksum. This avoids a possible race in doing hot backups. [#11636].
2. Add a check so that some log sequence errors are diagnosed at run time rather than during recovery. [#13231]
3. Fix a bug where recovery fails if there is no disk space for the forced checkpoint that occurs at the end of processing the log. [#13986]
4. Fix a bug which could cause a page to be missing from the end of a database file if the page at the end of the file was freed while it contained data and the system was restarted before the log record for that free was flushed to disk. [#14090]
5. Fix a bug that could cause log files to be incorrectly removed by log\_archive if it was run immediately after recovery. [#14874]

## Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug that could cause corruption to the buffer pool cache if a race condition was hit while using DB->compact. [#14360]
2. Fix a bug where cache pages could be leaked in applications creating temporary files for which the DB\_MPOOL\_NOFILE flag was set. [#14544]

## Transaction Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug that could cause extra empty pages to appear in a database file after recovery. [#11118]
2. Fix a bug triggered when running recovery with a feedback function that could cause a NULL pointer dereference. [#13834]
3. Fix a bug where running recovery could create duplicate entries in the data directory list. [#13884]
4. Fix a bug to not trade locks if a write lock is already owned. [#13917]
5. Fix a bug that could cause traps or hangs if the DB\_TXN->set\_name function is used in a multithreaded application. [#14033]
6. Fix a bug so that a transaction can no longer be committed after it had deadlocked. [#14037]
7. Fix a bug that could cause a trap during recovery if multiple operations that could remove the same extent are recovered. [#14061]
8. Fix a bug that could cause an extent file to be deleted after the last record in the extent was consumed but the consuming transaction was aborted. [#14179]
9. Fix a bug where the parent database would not use DB\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED in certain cases when calling DBC->c\_pget. [#14361]

10. Fix a bug so that it is no longer possible to do a non-transactional cursor update on a database that is opened transactionally. [#14519]
11. Fix a bug that causes a sequence to ignore the DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT settings. [#14582]
12. Fix a bug, change txn\_recover so that multiple processes will recover prepared transactions without requiring that the first process stay active. [#14707]
13. Fix a bug that could cause the wrong record to be deleted if a transaction had a cursor on a record with a pending delete and then replaced a record that contained overflow data or replaced a record with overflow data and that replace failed. [#14834]

### Utility Changes:

1. Fix a bug that caused db\_verify to not check the order on leaf pages which were the leftmost children of an internal node. [#13004]
2. Fix a bug that caused db\_hotbackup to not backup queue extent files. [#13848]
3. Fix a bug so that db\_verify no longer reports that an unused hash page is not fully zeroed. [#14030]
4. Fix a bug where db\_stat ignored the -f option to return "fast statistics". [#14283]
5. Fix a bug that prevented the db\_stat utility from opening database files with write permission so that meta data statistics would be updated. [#14755]
6. Fix a bug in db\_hotbackup related to windows. Sub-directories are now ignored. [#14757]

### Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:

1. The Berkeley DB 4.3 and 4.4 releases disallowed using the --with-unique-name configuration option with the C++, Java, or RPC --enable-XXX options. The 4.5 release returns to the 4.2 release behavior, allowing those combinations of configuration options. [#14067]
2. Fix build issues when CONFIG\_TEST is not enabled for Tcl. [#14507]
3. There are updated build instructions for Berkeley DB PHP module on Linux. [#14249]
4. Use libtool's "standard" environment variable names so that you can set "AR" to "ar -X64" for example, and modify both libtool and the Makefile commands. Remove the install-strip target from the Makefile, it is no longer used. [#14726]
5. Fix a bug where, when a database is opened with the DB\_THREAD flag (the default in Java), and an operation in one thread causes the database to be truncated (typically when the last page in the database is freed) concurrently with a read or write in another thread, there can be arbitrary data loss, as Windows zeros out pages from the read/write location to the end of the file. [#15063]

---

# Chapter 14. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.3 applications to Berkeley DB 4.4

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.3 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.4 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT

In previous Berkeley DB releases, the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag was used in the C and C++ Berkeley DB APIs to wrap operations within a transaction without explicitly creating a transaction and passing the `TXN` handle as part of the operation method call. In the 4.4 release, the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag no longer needs to be explicitly specified.

In the 4.4 release, specifying the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method causes all database modifications in that environment to be transactional; specifying `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` to the `DB->open()` method causes all modifications to that database to be transactional; specifying `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` to the `DB_ENV->dbremove()` methods causes those specific operations to be transactional.

No related application changes are required for this release, as the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag is ignored where it is no longer needed. However, application writers are encouraged to remove uses of the `DB_AUTO_COMMIT` flag in places where it is no longer needed.

Similar changes have been made to the Berkeley DB Tcl API. These changes are not optional, and Tcl applications will need to remove the `-auto_commit` flag from methods where it is no longer needed.

## DB\_DEGREE\_2, DB\_DIRTY\_READ

The names of two isolation-level flags changed in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release. The `DB_DEGREE_2` flag was renamed to `DB_READ_COMMITTED`, and the `DB_DIRTY_READ` flag was renamed to `DB_READ_UNCOMMITTED`, to match ANSI standard names for isolation levels. The historic flag names continue to work in this release, but may be removed from future releases.

## DB\_JOINENV

The semantics of joining existing Berkeley DB database environments has changed in the 4.4 release. Previously:

1. Applications joining existing environments, but not configuring some of the subsystems configured in the environment when it was created, would not be configured for those subsystems.

2. Applications joining existing environments, but configuring additional subsystems in addition to the subsystems configured in the environment when it was created, would cause additional subsystems to be configured in the database environment.

In the 4.4 release, the semantics have been simplified to make it easier to write robust applications. In the 4.4 release:

1. Applications joining existing environments, but not configuring some of the subsystems configured in the environment when it was created, will now automatically be configured for all of the subsystems configured in the environment.
2. Applications joining existing environments, but configuring additional subsystems in addition to the subsystems configured in the environment when it was created, will fail, as no additional subsystems can be configured for a database environment after it is created.

In other words, the choice of subsystems initialized for a Berkeley DB database environment is specified by the thread of control initially creating the environment. Any subsequent thread of control joining the environment will automatically be configured to use the same subsystems as were created in the environment (unless the thread of control requests a subsystem not available in the environment, which will fail). Applications joining an environment, able to adapt to whatever subsystems have been configured in the environment, should open the environment without specifying any subsystem flags. Applications joining an environment, requiring specific subsystems from their environments, should open the environment specifying those specific subsystem flags.

The `DB_JOINENV` flag has been changed to have no effect in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release. Applications should require no changes, although uses of the `DB_JOINENV` flag may be removed.

## mutexes

The `DB_ENV->set_tas_spins` and `DB_ENV->get_tas_spins` methods have been renamed to `DB_ENV->mutex_set_tas_spins()` and `DB_ENV->mutex_get_tas_spins()` to match the new mutex support in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release. Applications calling the old methods should be updated to use the new method names.

For backward compatibility, the string "set\_tas\_spins" is still supported in `DB_CONFIG` files.

The `--with-mutexalign="ALIGNMENT"` compile-time configuration option has been removed from Berkeley DB configuration. Mutex alignment should now be configured at run-time, using the `DB_ENV->mutex_set_align()` method.

## DB\_MPOOLFILE->set\_clear\_len

The meaning of a 0 "clear length" argument to the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` method changed in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release. In previous releases, specifying a length of 0 was equivalent to the default, and the entire created page was cleared. Unfortunately, this left no way to specify that no part of the page needed to be cleared. In the 4.4 release, specifying a "clear length" argument of 0 means that no part of the page need be cleared.

Applications specifying a 0 "clear length" argument to the `DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()` method should simply remove the call, as the default behavior is to clear the entire created page.

## lock statistics

The names of two fields in the lock statistics changed in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release. The `st_nconflicts` field was renamed to be `st_lock_wait`, and the `st_nnowaits` field was renamed to be `st_lock_nowait`. The meaning of the fields is unchanged (although the documentation has been updated to make it clear what these fields really represent).

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release. No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.4 release.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.4.16 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. The on-disk log format has changed.

### New Features:

1. Add support to compact an existing Btree database. [#6750]
2. Add support for named in-memory databases. [#9927]
3. Add support for database environment recovery serialization. This simplifies multiprocess application architectures. Add `DB_REGISTER` flag to `DB_ENV->open()`. [#11511]
4. Add utility for performing hot backups of a database environment. [#11536]
5. Add replication configuration API. [#12110]
6. Add replication support to return error instead of waiting for client sync to complete. [#12110]
7. Add replication support for delayed client synchronization. [#12110]
8. Add replication support for client-to-client synchronization. [#12110]
9. Add replication support for bulk transfer. [#12110]
10. Add new flags `DB_DSYNC_DB` and `DB_DSYNC_LOG` [12941]
11. Add `DbEnv.log_printf`, a new `DbEnv` method which logs `printf` style formatted strings into the Berkeley DB database environment log. [#13241]

## Database Environment Changes:

1. Add a feature to support arbitrary alignment of mutexes in order to minimize cache line collisions. [#9580]
2. Change cache regions on 64-bit machines to allow regions larger than 4GB. [#10668]
3. Fix a bug where a loop could occur if the application or system failed during modification of the linked list of shared regions. [#11532]
4. Fix mutex alignment on Linux/PA-RISC, add test-and-set mutexes for MIPS and x86\_64. [#11575]
5. Fix a bug where private database environments (DB\_PRIVATE) on 64-bit machines would core dump because of 64-bit address truncation. [#11983]
6. Fix a bug where freed memory is accessed when DB\_PRIVATE environments are closed. This can happen on systems where the operating system holds mutex resources that must be freed when the mutex is destroyed. [#12591]
7. Fix a bug where the DbEnv.stat\_print method could self-deadlock and hang. The DbEnv.stat\_print method no longer displays statistics for any of the database environments databases. [#12039]
8. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could create fragmented filesystem-backed shared region files. [#12125]
9. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB stat calls could report a cache size of 0 after the statistics were cleared. [#12307]
10. Threads of control joining database environments are now configured for all of the subsystems (lock, log, cache, or transaction) for which the environment was originally configured, it is now an error to attempt configuration of additional subsystems after an environment is created. [#12422]
11. Fix a bug where negative percentages could be displayed in statistics output. [#12673]
12. Fix a bug that could cause a panic if the cache is filled with non-logging updated pages. [#12763]
13. Fix a bug that could cause an unreported deadlock if the application was using the DB\_DIRTY\_READ flag and the record was an off page duplicate record. [#12893]
14. Fix a bug where a handle lock could be incorrectly retained during a delete or rename operation. [#12906]

## Concurrent Data Store Changes:

1. Lock upgrades and downgrades are now accounted for separately from lock requests and releases. [#11155]



2. Fix a bug where a second process joining a Concurrent Data Store environment, with the DB\_CDB\_ALLDB flag set, would fail. This would happen if the first thread were not entirely finished with initialization. [#12277]

### **General Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where filesystem operations are improperly synchronized. [#10564]
2. Add support for database files larger than 2GB on Windows. [#11839]
3. Rename DB\_DEGREE\_2 (and all related flags) to DB\_READ\_COMMITTED. Rename DB\_DIRTY (and all related flags) to DB\_READ\_UNCOMMITTED. [#11776]
4. Fix a bug where wrapping of sequences was incorrect when the cache size is smaller than the range of the maximum value minus the minimum value. [#11997]
5. Fix a bug that could result in a hot backup having a page missing from a database file if a file truncation was in progress during the backup but was then aborted. [#12017]
6. Fix a bug where a long filename could cause one too few bytes to be allocated when opening a file. [#12085]
7. Fix a bug in secondary cursor code if a write lock is not granted. [#12109]
8. Fix a bug in secondary cursors where the current record would change on error. [#12141]
9. Fix a bug in Db->truncate where the method was not checking to see if the handle was opened read-only. [#12179]
10. Fix a bug in sequences so that they are now platform independent, taking into account little-endian and big-endian architectures. They will be automatically upgraded in 4.4. [#12202]
11. Fix a bug with non-wrapping sequences when initial value was INT64\_MIN. [#12390]
12. Add a retry for operating system operations that return EIO (IO Error) to better support NFS mounted filesystems. [#12426]
13. Fix sequence wrapping at INT64 limits. [#12520]
14. Fix a bug where errors during DB->associate could leave secondaries half associated. [#13173]
15. Fix a bug so that we no longer will update in CDS and DS if the file size limit will be exceeded. [#13222]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

1. Remove maxkey configuration. [#8904]
2. Fix a memory leak in operations on large Btrees. [#12000]

## Hash Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where access to HASH or encrypted database pages might be blocked during a checkpoint. [#11031]
2. Fix a bug where recovery would fail when a database has a hash page on the free list and that hash page was freed without using transactions and later allocated and aborted within a transaction. [#11214]
3. Fix a bug in hash duplicates where if the caller left garbage in the partial length field, we were using it. Fix a bug where a replacement of a hash item that should have gone on an overflow page, did not. [#11966]
4. Fix a bug where free space was miscalculated when adding the first duplicate to an existing item and the existing item plus the new item does not fit on a page. [#12270]
5. Fix a bug where allocations of hash buckets are not recovered correctly. [#12846]

## Queue Access Method Changes:

1. Improve performance of deletes from a QUEUE database that does not have a secondary index. [#11538]
2. Fix a bug where updates that do not use transactions, but do enable locking, failed to release locks. [#11669]
3. Fix a bug where a transaction might not be rolled forward if the site was performing hot backups and an application aborted a prepared but not committed transaction. [#12181]
4. Fix a bug with queue extents not being reclaimed. [#12249]
5. Fix a bug where a record being inserted before the head of the queue could appear missing if DB\_CONSUME is not specified. [#12919]
6. Fix a bug that might cause recovery to move the head or tail of the queue to exclude a record that was deleted but whose transaction did not commit. [#13256]
7. Fix a bug that could cause recovery to move the head or tail pointer beyond a record that was aborted but was rolled backward by recovery. [#13318]

## Recno Access Method Changes

None.

## C++-specific API Changes:

1. Fix a bug so that a DbMemoryException will be raised during a DB\_BUFFER\_SMALL error. [#13273]

## Java-specific API Changes:

1. Add VersionMismatchException to map the DB\_VERSION\_MISMATCH error. [#11429]

2. Fix a bug in Environment.getConfiguration() method in non-crypto builds. [#11752]
3. Fix a bug that caused a NullPointerException when using the MultipleDataEntry default constructor. [#11753]
4. Fix handling of replication errors. [#11822]
5. Remove EnvironmentConfig.setReadOnly() method. [#11882]
6. Fix a bug where prefix strings in the error handler may be corrupted. [#11967]
7. Fix a bug so that nested exceptions will appear in stack traces. [#11992]
8. Fix a bug on LogSequenceNumber objects in the Java API. [#12223]
9. Fix a bug when no files are returned from a call to DB\_ENV->log\_archive. [#12383]
10. Fix a bug when multiple verbose flags are set. [#12383]
11. Fix a bug so that an OutOfMemoryError is thrown when allocation fails in the JNI layer. [#13434]

## Java collections and bind API Changes:

1. Binding performance has been improved by using System.arraycopy in the FastOutputStream and FastInputStream utility classes. [#12002]
2. The objectToEntry method is now implemented in all TupleBinding subclasses (IntegerBinding, etc) so that tuple bindings are fully nestable. An example of this usage is a custom binding that dynamically discovers the data types of each of the properties of a Java bean class. For each property, it calls TupleBinding.getPrimitiveBinding using the property's type (class). When the custom binding's objectToEntry method is called, it in turn calls the objectToEntry method of the nested bindings for each property. [#12124]
3. The getCause method for IOExceptionWrapper and RuntimeExceptionWrapper is now defined so that nested exceptions appear in stack traces for exceptions thrown by the collections API. [#11992]
4. TupleBinding.getPrimitiveBinding can now be passed a primitive type class as well as a primitive wrapper class. The return value for Integer.TYPE and Integer.class, for example, will be the same binding. [#12035]
5. Improvements have been made to prevent the buffer used in serial and tuple bindings from growing inefficiently, and to provide more alternatives for the application to specify the desired size. For details see com.sleepycat.bind.serial.SerialBase and com.sleepycat.bind.tuple.TupleBase. [#12398]
6. Add StoredContainer.getCursorConfig, deprecate isDirtyRead. Deprecate StoredCollections.dirtyReadMap (dirtyReadSet, etc) which is replaced by configuredMap (configuredSet, etc). Deprecated StoredContainer.isDirtyReadAllowed with no replacement (please use DatabaseConfig.getDirtyRead). Also note that

StoredCollections.configuredMap (configuredSet, etc) can be used to configure read committed and write lock containers, as well as read uncommitted containers, since all CursorConfig properties are supported. [#11776]

7. Add the protected method SerialBinding.getClassLoader so that subclasses may return a specific or dynamically determined class loader. Useful for applications which use multiple class loaders, including applications that serialize Groovy-defined classes. [#12764] [#12749]

### **Tcl-specific API Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that could cause a memory leak in the replication test code. [#13436]

### **RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:**

1. Fix double-free in RPC server when handling an out-of-memory error. [#11852]

### **Replication Changes:**

1. Fix race condition (introduced in 4.3) in rep\_start function. [#11030]
2. Changed internal initialization to no longer store records. [#11090]
3. Add support for replication bulk transfer. [#11099]
4. Berkeley DB now calls check\_doreq function for MASTER\_REQ messages. [#11207]
5. Fix a bug where transactions could be counted incorrectly during txn\_recover. [#11257]
6. Add DB\_REP\_IGNORE flag so that old messages (especially PERM messages) can be ignored by applications. [#11585]
7. Fix a bug where op\_timestamp was not initialized. [#11795]
8. Fix a bug in db\_refresh where a client would write a log record on closing a file. [#11892]
9. Fix backward arguments in C++ rep\_elect API. [#11906]
10. Fix a bug where a race condition could happen between downgrading a master and a database update operation. [#11955]
11. Fix a bug on VERIFY\_REQ. We now honor wait\_recs/rcvd. [#12097]
12. Fix a bug in rebroadcast of verify\_req by initializing lp->wait\_recs when finding a new master. [#12097]
13. Fix a bug by adding lockout checking to \_\_env\_rep\_enter since rename/remove now call it. [#12192]
14. Fix a bug so that we now skip \_\_db\_chk\_meta if we are a rep client. [#12316]
15. Fix a replication failure on Windows. [#12331]

16. Remove master discovery phase from rep\_elect as a performance improvement to speed up elections. [#12551]
17. Fix a bug to avoid multiple data streams when issuing al ALL\_REQ. [#12595]
18. Fix a bug to request the remaining gap again if the gap record is dropped after we receive the singleton. [#12974]
19. Fix a bug in internal initialization when master changes in the middle of initializing. [#13074]
20. Fix a bug in replication/archiving with internal init. [#13110]
21. Fix pp handling of db\_truncate. [#13115]
22. Fix a bug where rep\_timestamp could be updated when it should not be updated. [#13331]
23. Fix a bug with bulk transfer when toggling during updates. [#13339]
24. Change EINVAL error return to DB\_REP\_JOIN\_FAILURE. [#12110]
25. Add C++ exception for DB\_REP\_HANDLE\_DEAD. [#13361]
26. Fix a bug where starting an election concurrently with processing a NEWMASTER message could cause the send function to be called with an invalid eid. [#13403]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

None.

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

None.

### **Logging Subsystem Changes:**

1. Add set\_log\_filemode for applications that need to set an absolute file mode on log files. [#8747]
2. Fix a bug that caused Not Found to be returned if a log file exists but is not readable. [#11185]
3. Removed checksum of records with an in-memory log buffer. [#11280]
4. Fix a bug so that the DB\_LOG\_INMEMORY flag can no longer be set after calling DB\_ENV->open. [#11436]
5. Fix a bug introduced after release 4.0 where two simultaneous checkpoints could cause ckp\_lsn values to be out of order. [#12094]
6. Fix a bug when in debug mode and using the DEBUG\_ROP which will now log read operations in \_\_dbc\_logging. [#12303]

7. Fix a bug where failing to write a log record on a file close would result in a core dump later. [#12460]
8. Fix a bug where automatic log file removal, or the return of log files using an absolute path, could fail silently if the applications current working directory could not be reached using the systems getcwd library call. [#12505]
9. Avoid locking the log region if we are not going to flush the log. This can improve performance for some write-intensive application workloads. [#13090]
10. Fix a bug with a possible segment fault when memp\_stat\_print is called on a temporary database. [#13315]
11. Fix a bug where log\_stat\_print could deadlock with threads during a checkpoint. [#13315]

### **Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where modified database pages might not be flushed if recovery were run and all pages from a database were found in the system cache and up to date, followed by a system crash. [#11654]

### **Transaction Subsystem Changes:**

1. Add new DbTxn class methods allowing applications to set/get a descriptive name associated with a transaction. The descriptive name is also displayed by the db\_stat utility. [#0382]
2. Fix a bug where aborting a transaction with a large number of nested transactions could take a long time. [#10972]
3. Add support to allow the TXN\_WRITE\_NOSYNC flag to be specified on the transaction handle. [#11151]
4. Fix a bug that could cause a page to be on the free list twice if it was originally put on the free list by a non-transactional update and then reallocated in a transaction that aborts. [#11159]
5. Remove the requirement for the DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT flag to make database operations transactional. Specifying the database environment as transactional or opening the database handle transactionally is sufficient. [#11302]
6. Fix a bug so that environments created from errant programs that called dbp->close while transactions were still active can now be recovered. [#11384]
7. Fix a bug that caused free pages at the end of a file to be truncated during recovery rather than placed on the free page list. [#11643]
8. Fix a bug that caused a page to have the wrong type if the truncate of a BREE or RECNO database needed to be rolled forward. [#11670]
9. Fix a bug when manually undoing a subdb create, dont try to free a root page that has not been allocated. [#11925]

10. Add a check on database open to see if log files were incorrectly removed by system administration mistakes. [#12178]
11. Fix a bug when calling DB->pget and then specifying the DB\_READ\_COMMITTED (DB\_DEGREE\_2) on a cursor. If followed by a DBC->c\_pget, the primary database would incorrectly remain locked. [#12410]
12. Fix a bug where the abort of a transaction in which a sub database was opened with the DB\_TXN\_NOT\_DURABLE flag could fail. [#12420]
13. Fix a bug that could cause an abort transaction that allocated new pages to a file that were not flushed to disk prior to the abort transaction to report out of disk space. [#12743]
14. Fix a bug that could prevent multiple creates and destroys of the same file to be recovered correctly. [#13026]
15. Fix a bug when recovery previously handled a section of the log that did not contain any transactions. [#13139]
16. Fix a bug that could result in the loss of durability in Transactional Environments on Mac OS X. [#13149]
17. Fix a bug that could cause the improper reuse of a transaction id when recovery restores prepared transactions. [#13256]

### **Utility Changes:**

1. Add utility for performing hot backups of a database environment. [#11536]
2. Change the Verify utility to now identify any nodes that have incorrect record counts. [#11934]
3. Fix a bug in the 1.85 compatibility code supporting per-application Btree comparison and prefix compression functions. The functions would not work on big-endian 64-bit hardware. [#13316]

### **Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:**

1. Change the ex\_tpcb sample application to no longer displays intermediate results. It displays results at the end of the run. [#11259]
2. Change the Visual Studio projects on Windows so that each is in an intermediate directory. [#11441]
3. Fix errors in test subdb011. [#11799]
4. Fix a bug that could cause applications using gcc on Power PC platforms to hang. [#12233]
5. Fix a bug where installation will fail if a true program cannot be found. [#12278]
6. Fix a bug that prevented C++ applications from configuring XA [#12300].

7. Fix a race condition in the Windows mutex implementation found on 8-way Itanium systems. [#12417]
8. Add pthread mutex support for IBM OS/390 platform (z/OS or MVS). [#12639]
9. Fix a bug where the Tcl API did not configure on OS X 10.4. [#12699]
10. Fix portability issues with queue or recno primary databases. [#12872]
11. Fix a bug where utility attempted to send replication message. [#13446]

## **Berkeley DB 4.4.20 Change Log**

### **Changes since Berkeley DB 4.4.16:**

1. Add support for Visual Studio 2005. [#13521]
2. Fix a bug with in-memory transaction logs when files wrapped around the buffer. [#13589]
3. Fix a bug where we needed to close replications open files during replication initialization. [#13623]
4. Fix a bug which could leave locks in the environment if database compaction was run in a transactional environment on a non-transactional database. This might have also have triggered deadlocks if the database was opened transactionally. [#13680]
5. Fix a bug where setting the DB\_REGISTER flag could result in unnecessarily running recovery, or corruption of the registry file on Windows systems. [#13789]
6. Fix a bug in Database.compact that could cause JVM crashes or NullPointerException. [#13791]
7. Fix a bug that would cause a trap if an environment was opened specifying DB\_REGISTER and the environment directory could not be found. [#13793]
8. Fix a buffer overflow bug when displaying process and thread IDs in the Berkeley DB statistics output. [#13796]
9. Fix a bug where if there is insufficient memory for a database key in a DBT configured to return a key value into user-specified memory, the cursor is moved forward to the next entry in the database, which can cause applications to skip key/data pairs. [#13815]
10. Fix a bug that could cause the loss of an update to a QUEUE database in a hot backup. [#13823]
11. Fix a bug where retrieval from a secondary index could result in a core dump. [#13843]
12. Fix a bug that could cause part of the free list to become unlinked if a btree compaction was rolled back due to a transaction abort. [#13891]
13. Fix a bug with in-memory logging that could cause a race condition to corrupt the logs. [#13919]



---

# Chapter 15. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.2 applications to Berkeley DB 4.3

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.2 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.3 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## Java

The Berkeley DB Java API has changed significantly in the 4.3 release, in ways incompatible with previous releases. This has been done to provide a consistent Java-like API for Berkeley DB as well as to make the Berkeley DB Java API match the API in Berkeley DB Java Edition, to ease application-porting between the two libraries.

Here is a summary of the major changes:

- Db -> Database
  - Dbc -> Cursor
  - Dbt -> DatabaseEntry
  - DbEnv -> Environment
  - DbTxn -> Transaction
  - Db.cursor -> Database.openCursor
  - Dbc.get(..., DbConstants.DB\_CURRENT) -> Cursor.getCurrent(...)
1. The low-level wrapper around the C API has been moved into a package called `com.sleepycat.db.internal`.
  2. There is a new public API in the package `com.sleepycat.db`.
  3. All flags and error numbers have been eliminated from the public API. All configuration is done through method calls on configuration objects.
  4. All classes and methods are named to Java standards, matching Berkeley DB Java Edition. For example:
  5. The statistics classes have "getter" methods for all fields.
  6. In transactional applications, the Java API infers whether to auto-commit operations: if an update is performed on a transactional database without supplying a transaction, it is implicitly auto-committed.
  7. The `com.sleepycat.bdb.*` packages have been reorganized so that the binding classes can be used with the base API in the `com.sleepycat.db` package. The

bind and collection classes are now essentially the same in Berkeley DB and Berkeley DB Java Edition. The former `com.sleepycat.bdb.bind.*` packages are now the `com.sleepycat.bind.*` packages. The former `com.sleepycat.bdb`, `com.sleepycat.bdb.collections`, and `com.sleepycat.bdb.factory` packages are now combined in the new `com.sleepycat.collections` package.

8. A layer of the former collections API has been removed to simplify the API and to remove the redundant implementation of secondary indices. The former `DataStore`, `DataIndex`, and `ForeignKeyIndex` classes have been removed. Instead of wrapping a `Database` in a `DataStore` or `DataIndex`, the `Database` object is now passed directly to the constructor of a `StoredMap`, `StoredList`, etc.

## DB\_ENV->set\_errcall, DB->set\_errcall

The signature of the error callback passed to the `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` and `DB->set_errcall()` methods has changed in the 4.3 release. For example, if you previously had a function such as this:

```
void handle_db_error(const char *prefix, char *message);
```

it should be changed to this:

```
void handle_db_error(const DB_ENV *dbenv,  
                    const char *prefix, const char *message);
```

This change adds the `DB_ENV` handle to provide database environment context for the callback function, and incidentally makes it clear the message parameter cannot be changed by the callback.

## DBCursor->c\_put

The 4.3 release disallows the `DB_CURRENT` flag to the `DBC->put()` method after the current item referenced by the cursor has been deleted. Applications using this sequence of operations should be changed to do the put without first deleting the item.

## DB->stat

The 4.3 release adds transactional support to the `DB->stat()` method.

Application writers can simply add a `NULL txnid` argument to the `DB->stat()` method calls in their application to leave the application's behavior unchanged.

## DB\_ENV->set\_verbose

The 4.3 release removes support for the `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` method flag `DB_VERB_CHKPOINT`. Application writers should simply remove any use of this flag from their applications.

The 4.3 release redirects output configured by the `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` method from the error output channels (see the `DB_ENV->set_errfile()` and `DB_ENV->set_errcall()` methods for

more information) to the new `DB_ENV->set_msgcall()` and `DB_ENV->set_msgfile()` message output channels. This change means the error output channels are now only used for errors, and not for debugging and performance tuning messages as well as errors. Application writers using `DB_ENV->set_verbose()` should confirm that output is handled appropriately.

## Logging

In previous releases, the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method flag `DB_TXN_NOT_DURABLE` specified that transactions for the entire database environment were not durable. However, it was not possible to set this flag in environments that were part of replication groups, and physical log files were still created. The 4.3 release adds support for true in-memory logging for both replication and non-replicated sites.

Existing applications setting the `DB_TXN_NOT_DURABLE` flag for database environments should be upgraded to set the `DB_LOG_INMEMORY` flag instead.

In previous releases, log buffer sizes were restricted to be less than or equal to the log file size; this restriction is no longer required.

## DB\_FILEOPEN

The 4.3 release removes the `DB_FILEOPEN` error return. Any application check for the `DB_FILEOPEN` error should be removed.

## ENOMEM and DbMemoryException

In versions of Berkeley DB before 4.3, the error **ENOMEM** was used to indicate that the buffer in a DBT configured with `DB_DBT_USERMEM` was too small to hold a key or data item being retrieved. The 4.3 release adds a new error, `DB_BUFFER_SMALL`, that is returned in this case.

The reason for the change is that the use of **ENOMEM** was ambiguous: calls such as `DB->get()` or `DBC->get()` could return **ENOMEM** either if a DBT was too small or if some resource was exhausted.

The result is that starting with the 4.3 release, C applications should always treat **ENOMEM** as a fatal error. Code that checked for the **ENOMEM** return and allocated a new buffer should be changed to check for `DB_BUFFER_SMALL`.

In C++ applications configured for exceptions, a `DbMemoryException` will continue to be thrown in both cases, and applications should check the `errno` in the exception to determine which error occurred.

In Java applications, a `DbMemoryException` will be thrown when a `Dbt` is too small to hold a return value, and an `OutOfMemoryError` will be thrown in all cases of resource exhaustion.

## Replication

The 4.3 release removes support for logs-only replication clients. Use of the `DB_REP_LOGSONLY` flag to the `DB_ENV->rep_start()` should be replaced with the `DB_REP_CLIENT` flag.

The 4.3 release adds two new arguments to the `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` method, `nvotes` and `flags`. The `nvotes` argument sets the required number of replication group members that must participate in an election in order for a master to be declared. For backward compatibility, set the `nvotes` argument to 0. The `flags` argument is currently unused and should be set to 0. See `DB_ENV->rep_elect()` method or "Replication Elections" for more information.

In the 4.3 release it is no longer necessary to do a database environment hot backup to initialize a replication client. All that is needed now is for the client to join the replication group. Berkeley DB will perform an internal backup from the master to the client automatically and will run recovery on the client to bring it up to date with the master.

## Run-time configuration

The signatures of the `db_env_set_func_ftruncate` and `db_env_set_func_seek` functions have been simplified to take a byte offset in one parameter rather than a page size and a page number.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.3 release. No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.3 release.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.3.29 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. The on-disk log format has changed.

### New Features:

1. Add support for light weight, transactionally protected Sequence Number generation. [#5739]
2. Add support for Degree 2 isolation. [#8689]
3. Add election generation information to replication to support Paxos compliance. [#9068]
4. Add support for 64-bit and ANSI C implementations of the RPCGEN utility. [#9548]

### Database Environment Changes:

1. Fix a bug where the permissions on system shared memory segments did not match the mode specified in the `DB_ENV->open()` method. [#8921]
2. Add a new return error from the `DB_ENV->open()` method call, `DB_VERSION_MISMATCH`, which is returned in the case of an application compiled under one version of Berkeley DB attempting to open an environment created under a different version. [#9077]

3. Add support for importing databases from a transactional database environment into a different environment. [#9324]
4. Fix a bug where a core dump could occur if a zero-length database environment name was specified. [#9233]
5. Increase the number of environment regions to 100. [#9297]
6. Remove the DB\_ENV->set\_verbose() method flag DB\_VERB\_CHKPOINT. [#9405]
7. Fix bugs where database environment getters could return incorrect information after the database environment was opened, if a different thread of control changed the database environment values. Fix bugs where database environment getter/setter functions could race with other threads of control. [#9724]
8. Change the DbEnv.set\_lk\_detect method to match the DbEnv.open semantics. That is, DbEnv.set\_lk\_detect may be called after the database environment is opened, allowing applications to configure automatic deadlock detection if it has not yet been configured. [#9724]
9. Fix cursor locks for environments opened without DB\_THREAD so that they use the same locker ID. This eliminates many common cases of application self-deadlock, particularly in CDS. [#9742]
10. Fix a bug in DB->get\_env() in the C API where it could return an error when it should only return the DB\_ENV handle. C++ and Java are unchanged. [#9828]
11. Fix a bug where we only need to initialize the cryptographic memory region when MPOOL, Log or Transactions have been configured. [#9872]
12. Change private database environments at process startup to only allocate the heap memory required at any particular time, rather than always allocating the maximum amount of heap memory configured for the environment. [#9889]
13. Add a method to create nonexistent intermediate directories when opening database files. [#9898]
14. Add support for in-memory logging within database environments. [#9927]
15. Change Berkeley DB so configuring a database environment for automatic log file removal affects all threads in the environment, not just the DbEnv handle in which the configuration call is made. [#9947]
16. Change the signature of the error callback passed to the DB\_ENV->set\_errcall and DB->set\_errcall methods to add a DB\_ENV handle, to provide database environment context for the callback function. [#10025]
17. Fix a race condition between DB->close and DB->{remove,rename} on filesystems that don't allow file operations on open files (such as Windows). [#10180]
18. Add a DB\_DSYNC\_LOG flag to the DbEnv::set\_flags method, which configures O\_DSYNC on POSIX systems and FILE\_FLAG\_WRITE\_THROUGH on Win32 systems. This offers

significantly better performance for some applications on certain Solaris/filesystem combinations. [#10205]

19. Fix a bug where calling the DB or DBEnv database remove or rename methods could cause a transaction checkpoint or cache flush to fail. [#10286]
20. Change file operations not to flush a file if it hasn't been written. [#10537]
21. Remove 4GB restriction on region sizes on 64 bit machines. [#10668]
22. Simplify the signature of substitute system calls for ftruncate and seek. [#10668]
23. Change Berkeley DB so that opening an environment without specifying a home directory will cause the DB\_CONFIG file in the current directory to be read, if it exists. [#11424]
24. Fix a bug that caused a core dump if DB handles without associated database environments were used for database verification. [#11649]
25. Fix Windows mutexes shared between processes run as different users. [#11985]
26. Fix Windows mutexes for some SMP machines. [#12417]

### **Concurrent Data Store Changes:**

1. Fix cursor locks for environments opened without DB\_THREAD so that they use the same locker ID. This eliminates many common cases of application self-deadlock, particularly in CDS. [#9742]

### **General Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB log cursors would close and reopen the underlying log file each time the log file was read. [#8934]
2. Improve performance of DB->open() for existing subdatabases maintained within the same database file. [#9156]
3. Add a new error, DB\_BUFFER\_SMALL, to differentiate from ENOMEM. The new error indicates that the supplied DBT is too small. ENOMEM is now always fatal. [#9314]
4. Fix a bug when an update through a secondary index is deadlocked it is possible for the deadlock to be ignored, resulting in a partial update to the data. [#9492]
5. Fix a bug where a record could get inserted into the wrong database when a page was deallocated from one subdatabase and reallocated to another subdatabase maintained within the same database file. [#9510]
6. Enhance file allocation so that if the operating system supports decreasing the size of a file and the last page of the file is freed, it will be returned to the operating system. [#9620]
7. Fix a bug where DB\_RUNRECOVERY could be returned if there was no more disk space while aborting the allocation of a new page in a database. [#9643]

8. Fix a bug where the cryptographic code could memcpy too many bytes. [#9648]
9. Fix a bug with DB->join() cursors that resulted in a memory leak and incomplete results. [#9763]
10. Disallow cursor delete, followed a cursor put of the current item across all access methods. [#9900]
11. Fix a bug where recovery of operations on unnamed databases that were never closed, could fail. [#10118]
12. Fix a bug where DB->truncate of a database with overflow records that spanned more than one page would loop. [#10151]
13. Improve performance in the database open/close path. [#10266]
14. Fix a bug that restricted the number of temporary files that could be created to 127. [#10415]
15. Fix a bug which could cause a Too many files error when trying to create temporary files. Limit the number of temporary file creation retries. [#10760] [#10773]
16. Fix a memory leak bug with Sequence Numbers. [#11589]
17. Fix a bug on Windows platforms that prevents database files from growing to over 2GB. [#11839]
18. Fix a platform independence bug with sequence numbers. Existing sequence numbers will be automatically upgraded upon next access. [#12202]
19. Fix a race between truncate and read/write operations on Windows platforms that could cause corrupt database files. [#12598]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where a record could get placed on the wrong page when two threads are simultaneously trying to split a four level (or greater) Btree. [#9542]
2. Fix a bug where calling DB->truncate() on a Btree which has duplicate keys that overflow the leaf page would not properly free the overflow pages and possibly loop. [#10666]

### **Hash Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where a delete to a HASH database with off page duplicates could fail to have the proper lock when deleting an off page duplicate tree. [#9585]
2. Fix a bug where a dirty reader using a HASH database would leave a lock on the meta page. [#10105]
3. Fix a bug where a DB->del() on a HASH database supporting dirty reads could fail to upgrade a WWRITE lock to a WRITE lock when deleting an off page duplicate. [#10649]

## Queue Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where DB\_CONSUME\_WAIT may loop rather than wait for a new record to enter the queue, if the queue gets into a state where there are only deleted records between the head and the end of queue. [#9215]
2. Fix a bug where a Queue extent file could be closed when it was empty, even if a thread was still accessing a page from that file. [#9291]
3. Fix a bug where DBC->c\_put(key, data, DB\_CURRENT) where inserting a new record after the current record had been deleted was returning DB\_KEYEMPTY. [#9314]
4. Fix a bug where a Queue extent file could be reported as not found if a race condition was encountered between removing the file and writing out a stale buffer. [#9462]
5. Fix a bug where the Queue access method might fail to release a record lock when running without transactions. [#9487]
6. Add DB\_INORDER flag for Queue databases to guarantee FIFO (First In, First Out) ordering when using DB\_CONSUME or DB\_CONSUME\_WAIT. [#9689]
7. Fix a bug where remove and rename calls could fail with a "Permission denied" error. [#9775]
8. Fix a bug where aborting a transaction that opened and renamed a queue database using extents could leave some of the extent files with the wrong name on Windows. [#9781]
9. Fix a bug where a db\_dump of a queue database could return an error at the end of the queue if the head or tail of the queue is the first record on a page. [#10215]
10. Fix a race condition which would leave a Queue extent file open until the database handle was closed, preventing it from being removed. [#10591]
11. Fix a bug where a deadlock of a put on a database handle with dirty readers could generate a lock downgrade error. [#10678]
12. Fix a bug which caused DB\_SET\_RANGE and DB\_GET\_BOTH\_RANGE to not return the next record when an exact match was not found. [#10860]

## Recno Access Method Changes

1. Fix a bug where the key/data counts returned by the Db->stat method for Recno databases did not match the documentation. [#8639]
2. Fix a bug where DBC->c\_put(key, data, DB\_CURRENT) where inserting a new record after the current record had been deleted was returning DB\_KEYEMPTY. [#9314].

## C++-specific API Changes:

1. Change DbException to extend std::exception, making it possible for applications to catch all exceptions in one place. [#10022]



2. Fix a bug where errors during transaction destructors (commit, abort) could cause an invalid memory access. [#10302]
3. Fix a bug that could lead to a read through an uninitialized pointer when a DbLockNotGrantedException is thrown. [#10470]
4. Fix a bug in the C++ DbEnv::rep\_elect method API where the arguments were swapped, leading to an "Invalid Argument" return when that method is called. [#11906]

### **Java-specific API Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where the Java API did not respect non-zero return values from secondaryKeyCreate, including DB\_DONOTINDEX. [#9474]
2. Fix a bug where a self-deadlock occurred with a non-transactional class catalog database used in a transactional environment. The bug only occurred when the collections API was not used for starting transactions. [#9521]
3. Improve Javadoc for the Java API. [#9614]
4. Improve memory management and performance when large byte arrays are being passed to DB methods. [#9801]
5. Improve performance of accessing statistics information from the Java API. [#9835]
6. Allow Java application to run without DB\_THREAD so they can be used as RPC clients. [#10097]
7. Fix a bug where an uninitialized pointer is dereferenced for logArchive(Db.DB\_ARCH\_REMOVE). [#10225]
8. Fix a bug in the Collections API where a deadlock exception could leave a cursor open. [#10516]
9. Fix the replication callback in the Java API so that the parameter names match the C API. [#10550]
10. Add get methods to the Java statistics classes. [#10807]
11. Fix bugs in the Java API handling of null home directories and environments opened without a memory pool. [#11424]
12. Fix the Java API in the non-crypto package. [#11752]
13. Fix a bug that would cause corruption of error prefix strings. [#11967]
14. Fix handling of LSNs in the Java API. [#12223]
15. Dont throw a NullPointerException if the list of files returned by log\_archive is empty. [#12383]

### **Tcl-specific API Changes:**

None.

---

## RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:

1. Add support for 64-bit and ANSI C implementations of the RPCGEN utility. [#9548]
2. Fix a small memory leak in RPC clients. [#9595]
3. Fix a bug in the RPC server to avoid self-deadlock by always setting DB\_TXN\_NOWAIT. [#10181]
4. Fix a bug in the RPC server so that if it times out an environment, it first closes all the Berkeley DB handles in that environment. [#10623]

## Replication Changes:

1. Add an Environment ID to distinguish between clients from different replication groups. [#7786]
2. Add number of votes required and flags parameters to DB\_ENV->rep\_elect() method. [#7812]
3. Fix a bug where a client's env\_openfiles pass could start with the wrong LSN. This could result in very long initial sync-up times for clients joining a replication group. [#8635]
4. Add election generation information to replication to support Paxos compliance. [#9068]
5. Add rep019 to test running normal recovery on clients to make sure we sync to the correct LSNs. [#9151]
6. Remove support for logs-only replication clients. Use of the DB\_REP\_LOGSONLY flag to the DB\_ENV->rep\_start() method should be replaced with the DB\_REP\_CLIENT flag. [#9331]
7. Fix a bug where replication clients fail to lock all the necessary pages when applying updates when there are more than one database in the transaction. [#9569]
8. Fix a bug in replication elections where when elections are called by multiple threads the wrong master could get elected. [#9770]
9. Fix a bug where the master could get a DB\_REP\_OUTDATED error. Instead send an OUTDATED message to the client. [#9881]
10. Add support for automatic initialization of replication clients. [#9927]
11. Modify replication timestamp so that non-replication client applications can get a DB\_REP\_HANDLE\_DEAD. [#9986]
12. Add a new DB\_REP\_STARTUPDONE return value for rep\_process\_message() and st\_startup\_done to rep\_stat() to indicate when a client has finished syncing up to a master and is processing live messages. [#10310]
13. Add \_pp to secondary handles, add RPRINT, fix a deadlock. [#10429]
14. Fix a bug where an old client (and no master) that dropped the ALIVE message would never update to the current generation. [#10469]

15. Fix a bug where a message could get sent to a new client before NEWSITE has been returned to the application. Broadcast instead. [#10508]
16. Fix a crash when verbose replication messages are configured and a NULL DB\_LSN pointer is passed to rep\_process\_message. [#10508]
17. Add code to respect set\_rep\_limit in LOG\_REQ processing. [#10716]
18. Fix a synchronization problem between replication recovery and database open. [#10731]
19. Change elections to adjust timeout if egen changes while we are waiting. [#10686]
20. Client perm messages now return ISPERM/NOTPERM instead of 0. [#10855] [#10905]
21. Fix a race condition during rep\_start when a role change occurs. Fix memory leaks. [#11030]
22. Fix problems with duplicate records. A failure will no longer occur if the records are old records (LOG\_MORE) and archived. [#11090]
23. Fix a bug where the replication temporary database would grow during automatic client initialization. [#11090]
24. Add throttling to PAGE\_REQ. [#11130]
25. Remove optimization-causing problems with racing threads in rep\_verify\_match. [#11208]
26. Fix memory leaks. [#11239]
27. Fix an initialization bug when High Availability configurations are combined with private database environments, which can cause intermittent failures. [#11795]
28. Fix a bug in the C++ DbEnv::rep\_elect method API where the arguments were swapped, leading to an "Invalid Argument" return when that method is called. [#11906]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

None.

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where a deadlock of an upgrade from a dirty read to a write lock during an aborted transaction, may not be detected. [#7143]
2. Add support for Degree 2 isolation. [#8689]
3. Change the system to return DB\_LOCK\_DEADLOCK if a transaction attempts to get new locks after it has been selected as the deadlock victim. [#9111]
4. Fix a bug where when configured to support dirty reads, a writer may not downgrade a write lock as soon as possible, potentially blocking dirty readers. [#9197]
5. Change the test-and-set mutex implementation to avoid interlocked instructions when we know the instruction is unlikely to succeed. [#9204]

6. Fix a bug where a thread supporting dirty readers can get blocked while trying to get a write lock. It will allocate a new lock rather than using an existing WAS\_WRITE lock when it becomes unblocked, causing the application to hang. [#10093]
7. The deadlock detector will now note that a parent transaction should be considered in abort if one of its children is. [#10394]
8. Remove a deadlock where database closes could deadlock with page acquisition. [#10726]
9. Fix a bug where a dirty reader could read an overflow page that was about to be deleted. [#10979]
10. Fix a bug that failed to downgrade existing write locks during a btree page split when supporting dirty reads. [#10983]
11. Fix a bug that would fail to upgrade a write lock when moving a cursor off a previously deleted record. [#11042]

### **Logging Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where recovery could leave too many files open. [#9452]
2. Fix a bug where aborting a transaction with a file open in it could result in an unrecoverable log file. [#9636]
3. Fix a bug where recovery would not return a fatal error if the transaction log was corrupted. [#9841]
4. Fix a bug in recovery so that the final checkpoint no longer tries to flush the log. This will permit recovery to complete even if there is no disk space to grow the log file. [#10204]
5. Improve performance of log flushes by pre-allocating log files and using fdatsync() in preference to fsync(). [#10228]
6. Fix a bug where recovery of a page split after a non-transactional update to the next page would fail to update the back pointer. [#10421]
7. Fix a bug in log\_archive() where \_\_env\_rep\_enter() was called twice. [#10577]
8. Fix a bug with in-memory logs that could cause a memory leak in the log region. [#11505]

### **Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug in the MPOOLFILE file\_written flag value so that checkpoint doesn't repeatedly open, flush and sync files in the cache for which there are no active application handles. [#9529]

### **Transaction Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where the same transaction ID could get allocated twice if you wrapped the transaction ID space twice and then had a very old transaction. [#9036]

2. Fix a bug where a transaction abort that contained a page allocation could loop if the filesystem was full. [#9461]
3. Fix implementation of DB->get\_transactional() to match documentation: there is no possibility of error return, only 0 or 1. [#9526]
4. Fix a bug where re-setting any of the DB\_TXN\_NOSYNC, DB\_TXN\_NOT\_DURABLE and DB\_TXN\_WRITE\_NOSYNC flags could fail to clear previous state, potentially leading to incorrect transactional behavior in the application. [#9947]
5. Add a feature to configure the maximum number of files that a checkpoint will hold open. [#10026]
6. An aborting transaction will no longer generate an undetected deadlock. [#10394]
7. Fix a bug that prevented a child transaction from accessing a database handle that was opened by its parent transaction. [#10783]
8. Fix a bug where a checkpoint or a delayed write in another process could raise an EINVAL error if the database had been opened with the DB\_TXN\_NOT\_DURABLE flag. [#10824]
9. Fix private transactional environments on 64-bit systems. [#11983]

## Utility Changes:

1. Add debugging and performance tuning information to db\_stat. Add new Berkeley DB handle methods to output debugging and performance tuning information to a C library FILE handle (C and C++ APIs only). [#9204]
2. Fix a bug where db\_stat could drop core if DB->open fails and no subdatabase was specified. [#9273]
3. Add command-line arguments to the db\_printlog utility to restrict the range of log file records that are displayed. [#9307]
4. Fix a bug in the locking statistics where current locks included failed lock requests. [#9314]
5. Fix a bug where db\_archive would remove all log files when --enable-diagnostic and DB\_NOTDURABLE were both specified. [#9459]
6. Fix a bug where db\_dump with the -r flag would output extra copies of the subdatabase information. [#9808]
7. Fix a bug in db\_archive that would cause log file corruption if the application had configured the environment with DB\_PRIVATE. [#9841]
8. Add support in db\_load for resetting database LSNs and file IDs without having to reload the database. [#9916]
9. Change the DB->stat() method to take a transaction handle as an argument, allowing DB->stat() to be called from within a transaction. [#9920]

10. Fix a bug in db\_printlog where only the first file would be displayed for in-memory logs. [#11505]
11. Fix a bug that prevented database salvage from working in Berkeley DB 4.3.21. [#11649]
12. Fix a bug in db\_load which made it impossible to specify more than a single option on the command line. [#11676]

## **Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:**

1. Add pread and pwrite to the list of system calls applications can replace at run-time. [#8954]
2. Add support for UTF-8 encoding of filenames on Windows. [#9122]
3. Remove C++ dependency on sprintf. Compilers on HPUX 10.20 are missing header file support for sprintf(). [#9284]
4. Change Berkeley DB to not use the open system call flag O\_DIRECT, unless DB configured using --enable-o\_direct. [#9298]
5. Fix several problems with mutex alignment on HP/UX 10.20. [#9404]
6. Fix a memory leak when HAVE\_MUTEX\_SYSTEM\_RESOURCES is enabled. [#9546]
7. Fix a bug in the sec002.tcl test for binary data. [#9626]
8. Fix a bug where filesystem blocks were not being zeroed out in the On-Time embedded Windows OS. [#9640]
9. Fix build problems with the Java API in Visual Studio .NET 2003. [#9701]
10. Add support for the gcc compiler on the Opteron platform. [#9725]
11. Add support for the small\_footprint build option for VxWorks. [#9820]
12. Add support for linking of DLLs with MinGW. [#9957]
13. Remove the make target which builds the RPM package from the Berkeley DB distribution. [#10233]
14. Add a C++/XML example for ex\_repquote. [#10380]
15. Fix a bug to link with lrt only if detected by configure (Mac OS X issue). [#10418]
16. Fix a bug and link Java and Tcl shared libraries with lpthread if required, for mutexes. [#10418]
17. Add support for building Berkeley DB on the HP NonStop OSS (Tandem) platform. [10483]
18. Change Berkeley DB to ignore EAGAIN from system calls. This fixed problems on NFS mounted databases. [#10531]

19. Remove a line with `bt_compare` and `bt_prefix` from the `db_dump` recovery test suite, which can cause failures on OpenBSD. [#10567]
20. Fix a conflict with the `lock_init` for building Berkeley DB on Cygwin. [#10582]
21. Add Unicode support for the Berkeley DB Windows API. [#10598]
22. Add support for 64-bit builds on Windows. [#10664]
23. Libtool version is now 1.5.8. [#10950]
24. Remove `mt` compilation flag for HP-UX 11.0. [#11427]
25. Fix a bug to link with `lrt` on Solaris to support `fdatasync`. [#11437]

---

# Chapter 16. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.1 applications to Berkeley DB 4.2

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.1 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.2 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## Java

There are a number of major changes to the Java support in Berkeley DB in this release. Despite that we have tried to make this a bridge release, a release where we don't require you to change anything. We've done this using the standard approach to deprecation in Java. If you do not compile with deprecation warnings on, your existing sources should work with this new release with only minor changes despite the large number of changes. Expect that in a future release we will remove all the deprecated API and only support the new API names.

This is a list of areas where we have broken compatibility with the 4.1 release. In most cases it is a name change in an interface class.

- **DbAppDispatch.app\_dispatch(DbEnv,Dbt,DbLsn,int)**  
is now: **DbAppDispatch.appDispatch(DbEnv,Dbt,DbLsn,int)**
- **DbAppendRecno.db\_append\_recno(Db,Dbt,int)**  
is now: **DbAppendRecno.dbAppendRecno(Db,Dbt,int)**
- **DbBtreeCompare.bt\_compare(Db,Dbt,Dbt)**  
is now: **DbBtreeCompare.compare(Db,Dbt,Dbt)**
- **DbBtreeCompare.dup\_compare(Db,Dbt,Dbt)**  
is now: **DbBtreeCompare.compareDuplicates(Db,Dbt,Dbt)**
- **DbBtreePrefix.bt\_prefix(Db,Dbt,Dbt)**  
is now: **DbBtreePrefix.prefix(Db,Dbt,Dbt)**
- **DbSecondaryKeyCreate.secondary\_key\_create(Db,Dbt,Dbt,Dbt)**  
is now: **DbSecondaryKeyCreate.secondaryKeyCreate(Db,Dbt,Dbt,Dbt)**

The 4.2 release of Berkeley DB requires at minimum a J2SE 1.3.1 certified Java virtual machine and associated classes to properly build and execute. To determine what version virtual machine you are running, enter:

```
java -version
```



at a command line and look for the version number. If you need to deploy to a version 1.1 or 1.0 Java environment, it may be possible to do so by not including the classes in the `com.sleepycat.bdb` package in the Java build process (however, that workaround has not been tested by us).

A few inconsistent methods have been cleaned up (for example, `Db.close` now returns void; previously, it returned an int which was always zero). The synchronized attributed has been toggled on some methods -- this is an attempt to prevent multithreaded applications from calling `close` or similar methods concurrently from multiple threads.

The Berkeley DB API has up until now been consistent across all language APIs. Although consistency has its benefits, it made our Java API look strange to Java programmers. Many methods have been renamed in this release of the Java API to conform with Java naming conventions. Sometimes this renaming was simply "camel casing", sometimes it required rewording. The mapping file for these name changes is in `dist/camel.pm`. The Perl script we use to convert code to the new names is called `dist/camelize.pl`, and may help with updating Java applications written for earlier versions of Berkeley DB.

Berkeley DB has a number of places where as a C library it uses function pointers to move into custom code for the purpose of notification of some event. In Java the best parallel is the registration of some class which implements an interface. In this version of Berkeley DB we have made an effort to make those interfaces more uniform and predictable. Specifically, `DbEnvFeedback` is now `DbEnvFeedbackHandler`, `DbErrcall` is `DbErrorHandler` and `DbFeedback` is `DbFeedbackHandler`. In every case we have kept the older interfaces and the older registration methods so as to allow for backward compatibility in this release. Expect them to be removed in future releases.

As you upgrade to this release of Berkeley DB you will notice that we have added an entirely new layer inside the package `com.sleepycat.bdb`. This was formerly the Greybird project by Mark Hayes. Sleepycat Software and Mark worked together to incorporate his work. We have done this in hopes of reducing the learning curve when using Berkeley DB in a Java project. When you upgrade you should consider switching to this layer as over time the historical classes and the new `bdb` package classes will be more and more integrated providing a simple yet powerful interface from Java into the Berkeley DB library.

Berkeley DB's Java API is now generated with [SWIG](#). The new Java API is significantly faster for many operations.

Some internal methods and constructors that were previously public have been hidden or removed.

Packages found under `com.sleepycat` are considered different APIs into the Berkeley DB system. These include the core db api (`com.sleepycat.db`), the collections style access layer (`com.sleepycat.bdb`) and the now relocated XA system (`com.sleepycat.xa`).

## Queue access method

We have discovered a problem where applications that specify Berkeley DB's encryption or data checksum features on Queue databases with extent files, the database data will not be protected. This is obviously a security problem, and we encourage you to upgrade these applications to the 4.2 release as soon as possible.

The Queue databases must be dumped and reloaded in order to fix this problem. First build the Berkeley DB 4.2 release, then use your previous release to dump the database, and the 4.2 release to reload the database. For example:

```
db-4.1.25/db_dump -P password -k database | \  
db-4.2.xx/db_load -P password new_database
```

Note this is **only** necessary for Queue access method databases, where extent files were configured along with either encryption or checksums.

## DB\_CHKSUM\_SHA1

The flag to enable checksumming of Berkeley DB databases pages was renamed from DB\_CHKSUM\_SHA1 to DB\_CHKSUM, as Berkeley DB uses an internal function to generate hash values for unencrypted database pages, not the SHA1 Secure Hash Algorithm. Berkeley DB continues to use the SHA1 Secure Hash Algorithm to generate hashes for encrypted database pages. Applications using the DB\_CHKSUM\_SHA1 flag should change that use to DB\_CHKSUM; no other change is required.

## DB\_CLIENT

The flag to create a client to connect to a RPC server was renamed from DB\_CLIENT to DB\_RPCCLIENT, in order to avoid confusion between RPC clients and replication clients. Applications using the DB\_CLIENT flag should change that use to DB\_RPCCLIENT; no other change is required.

## DB->del

In previous releases, the C++ Db::del and Java Db.delete() methods threw exceptions encapsulating the DB\_KEYEMPTY error in some cases when called on Queue and Recno databases. Unfortunately, this was undocumented behavior.

For consistency with the other Berkeley DB methods that handle DB\_KEYEMPTY, this is no longer the case. Applications calling the Db::del and Java Db.delete() methods on Queue or Recno databases, and handling the DB\_KEYEMPTY exception specially, should be modified to check for a return value of DB\_KEYEMPTY instead.

## DB->set\_cache\_priority

In previous releases, applications set the priority of a database's pages in the Berkeley DB buffer cache with the DB->set\_cache\_priority method. This method is no longer available. Applications wanting to set database page priorities in the buffer cache should use the mempset\_priority() method instead. The new call takes the same arguments and behaves identically to the old call, except that a DB\_MPOOLFILE buffer cache file handle is used instead of the DB database handle.

## DB->verify

In previous releases, applications calling the DB->verify() method had to explicitly discard the DB handle by calling the DB->close() method. Further, using the DB handle in other ways after

calling the `DB->verify()` method was not prohibited by the documentation, although such use was likely to lead to problems.

For consistency with other Berkeley DB methods, `DB->verify()` method has been documented in the current release as a DB handle destructor. Applications using the DB handle in any way (including calling the `DB->close()` method) after calling `DB->verify()` should be updated to make no further use of any kind of the DB handle after `DB->verify()` returns.

## DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED

In previous releases, configuring lock or transaction timeout values or calling the `DB_ENV->txn_begin()` method with the `DB_TXN_NOWAIT` flag caused database operation methods to return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED`, or throw a `DbLockNotGrantedException` exception. This required applications to unnecessarily handle multiple errors or exception types.

In the Berkeley DB 4.2 release, with one exception, database operations will no longer return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED` or throw a `DbLockNotGrantedException` exception. Instead, database operations will return `DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK` or throw a `DbDeadlockException` exception. This change should require no application changes, as applications must already be dealing with the possible `DB_LOCK_DEADLOCK` error return or `DbDeadlockException` exception from database operations.

The one exception to this rule is the `DB->get()` method using the `DB_CONSUME_WAIT` flag to consume records from a Queue. If lock or transaction timeouts are set, this method and flag combination may return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED` or throw a `DbLockNotGrantedException` exception.

Applications wanting to distinguish between true deadlocks and timeouts can configure database operation methods to return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED` or throw a `DbLockNotGrantedException` exception using the `DB_TIME_NOTGRANTED` flag.

The `DB_ENV->lock_get()` and `DB_ENV->lock_vec()` methods will continue to return `DB_LOCK_NOTGRANTED`, or throw a `DbLockNotGrantedException` exception as they have previously done.

## Replication

### Replication initialization

In the Berkeley DB 4.2 release, replication environments must be specifically initialized by any process that will ever do anything other than open databases in read-only mode (that is, any process which might call any of the Berkeley DB replication interfaces or modify databases). This initialization is done when the replication database environment handle is opened, by specifying the `DB_INIT_REP` flag to the `DB_ENV->open()` method.

### Database methods and replication clients

All of the DB object methods may now return `DB_REP_HANDLE_DEAD` when a replication client changes masters. When this happens the DB handle is no longer able to be used and the application must close the handle using the `DB->close()` method and open a new handle. This

new return value is returned when a client unrolls a transaction in order to synchronize with the new master. Otherwise, if the application was permitted to use the original handle, it's possible the handle might attempt to access nonexistent resources.

## DB\_ENV->rep\_process\_message()

The DB\_ENV->rep\_process\_message() method has new return values and an log sequence number (LSN) associated with those return values. The new argument is `ret_lsnp`, which is the returned LSN when the DB\_ENV->rep\_process\_message() method returns DB\_REP\_ISPERM or DB\_REP\_NOTPERM. See Transactional guarantees for more information.

## Client replication environments

In previous Berkeley DB releases, replication clients always behaved as if DB\_TXN\_NOSYNC behavior was configured, that is, clients would not write or synchronously flush their log when receiving a transaction commit or prepare message. However, applications needing a high level of transactional guarantee may need a write and synchronous flush on the client. By default in the Berkeley DB 4.2 release, client database environments write and synchronously flush their logs when receiving a transaction commit or prepare message. Applications not needing such a high level of transactional guarantee should use the environment's DB\_TXN\_NOSYNC flag to configure their client database environments to not do the write or flush on transaction commit, as this will increase their performance. Regardless of the setting of the DB\_TXN\_NOSYNC flag, clients will always write and flush on transaction prepare.

## Tcl API

The Tcl API included in the Berkeley DB 4.2 release requires Tcl release 8.4 or later.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.2 release. No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.2 release.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.2.52 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. Queue databases that use encryption or data checksum features with extent files will need to be dumped and reloaded prior to using with release 4.2. For more details please see the "Upgrading Berkeley DB Applications, Queue Access Method" in the Berkeley DB Reference Guide included in your download package. [#8671]
2. The on-disk log format changed.

### New Features:

1. Add support for a reduced memory footprint build of the Berkeley DB library. [#1967]

2. Add the DB\_MPOOLFILE->set\_flags interface which disallows the creation of backing filesystem files for in-memory databases. [#4224]
3. Add cache interfaces to limit the number of buffers written sequentially to allow applications to bound the time they will monopolize the disk. [#4935]
4. Support auto-deletion of log files. [#0040] [#6252]
5. The new Java DBX API for Berkeley DB allows Java programmers to use a familiar Java Collections style API, including Map, while interacting with the transactional Berkeley DB core engine. [#6260]
6. Support auto-commit with the DB->get method's consume operations. [#6954]
7. Add "get" methods to retrieve most settings. [#7061]
8. Add Javadoc documentation to the Berkeley DB release. [#7110]
9. Add support to Concurrent Data Store to allow duplication of write cursors. [#7167]
10. Add C++ utility classes for iterating over multiple key and data items returned from a cursor when using the DB\_MULTIPLE or DB\_MULTIPLE\_KEY flags. [#7351]
11. Add CamelCased methods to the Java API. [#7396]
12. Add the DB\_MPOOLFILE->set\_maxsize interface to enforce a maximum database size. [#7582]
13. Add a toString() method for all Java \*Stat classes (DbBtreeStat, DbHashStat, DbMpoolStat, etc.). This method creates a listing of values of all of the class member variables. [#7712]

## Database Environment Changes:

1. Add cache interfaces to limit the number of buffers written sequentially to allow applications to bound the time they will monopolize the disk. [#4935]
2. Fix a bug which could cause database environment open to hang, in database environments supporting cryptography. [#6621]
3. Fix a bug where a database environment panic might result from an out-of-disk-space error while rolling back a page allocation. [#6694]
4. Fix a bug where a database page write failure, in a database environment configured for encryption or byte-swapping, could cause page corruption. [#6791]
5. Fix a bug where DB->truncate could drop core if there were active cursors in the database. [#6846]
6. Fix a bug where for databases sharing a physical file required a file descriptor per database. [#6981]
7. Fix a bug where the panic callback routine was only being called in the first thread of control to detect the error when returning DB\_RUNRECOVERY. [#7019]

8. Fix a bug where a transaction which contained a remove of a subdatabase and an allocation to another subdatabase in the same file might not properly be aborted. [#7356]
9. Fix a bug to now disallow DB\_TRUNCATE on opens in locking environments, since we cannot prevent race conditions. In the absence of locking and transactions, DB\_TRUNCATE will truncate ANY file for which the user has appropriate permissions. [#7345]
10. Fix several bugs around concurrent creation of databases. [#7363]
11. Change methods in DbEnv that provide access to statistics information so that they now return instances of the proper classes. [#7395]
12. Replace the DB->set\_cache\_priority API with the DB\_MPOOLFILE->set\_priority API. [#7545]
13. Fix a bug where a failure during a creation of a subdatabase could then fail in the dbremove cleanup, causing a crash. [#7579]
14. Allow creating into a file that was renamed within the same transaction. [#7581]
15. Fix a bug where DB\_ENV->txn\_stat could drop core if there are more-than-expected active transactions. [#7638]
16. Change Berkeley DB to ignore user-specified byte orders when creating a database in an already existing physical file. [#7640]
17. Fix a bug where a database rename that is aborted would leak some memory. [#7789]
18. Fix a bug where files could not be renamed or removed if they were not writable. [#7819]
19. Fix a bug where an error during a database open may leak memory in the mpool region. [#7834]
20. Fix a bug where the DB\_ENV->trickle\_sync method could flush all of the dirty buffers in the cache rather than a subset. [#7863]
21. Fix a bug where an attempt to rename or remove an open file in the same transaction could succeed, even though this is not allowed and will not work on Windows. [#7917]
22. Fix a bug where if a recovery interval in the log contained only database opens then a recovery might report "Improper file close". [#7886]
23. Add a flag, DB\_INIT\_REP to DB\_ENV->open to initialize Replication subsystem. [#8299]
24. Fix a bug where file remove and rename operations would not block each other if they were in different transactions. [#8340]
25. Change Berkeley DB to not propagate error returns from the application's rep\_send function out of the Berkeley DB API. [#8496] [#8522]
26. Remove restriction that DB\_TRUNCATE is not allowed on files with subdatabases. This restriction was introduced in 4.1.25. [#8852]

## Concurrent Data Store Changes:

1. Fix a bug where opens with other threads/processes actively acquiring locks on database handles could deadlock. [#6286]
2. Add support to Concurrent Data Store to allow duplication of write cursors. [#7167]

## General Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where the truncate of a database with associated secondary databases did not truncate the secondaries. [#6585]
2. Fix a bug in which an out-of-disk condition during a transactional database create, remove, or rename could cause a crash. [#6695]
3. Fix a bug where system errors unknown to the C library could cause Berkeley DB utilities to drop core on Solaris. [#6728]
4. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could overwrite incorrectly formatted files rather than returning an error to the application during open. [#6769]
5. Fix a bug DB handle reference counts were incorrect, leading to spurious warning about open DB handles. [#6818]
6. Fix a bug where cursor adjustments across multiple DB handles could fail. [#6820]
7. Fix a bug where a failure during open could result in a hang. [#6902]
8. Fix a bug where repeated failures during certain stages of opens could cause error messages to appear during recovery. [#7008]
9. Fix a bug in secondary indices with multiple threads calling DBC->put that resulted in DB\_NOTFOUND being returned. [#7124]
10. Fix a bug where database verification might reference memory which was previously freed after reporting an error. [#7137]
11. Rename the DB\_CHKSUM\_SHA1 to DB\_CHKSUM as Berkeley DB only uses SHA1 for encrypted pages, not for clear text pages. [#7095]
12. Fix a bug where DB->rename could fail silently if the underlying system rename call failed. [#7322]
13. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB failed to open a file with FCNTL locking and 0-length files. [#7345]
14. Prohibit the use of the DB\_RMW flag on get operations for DB handles opened in transactional mode. [#7407]
15. Standardize when Berkeley DB will return DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED, or throw DbLockNotGrantedException, versus returning DB\_LOCK\_DEADLOCK or throwing DbDeadlockException. Fix bugs in the C++ and Java APIs where DbException was thrown,

- encapsulating DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED, rather than throwing DbLockNotGrantedException. [#7549]
16. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could hang on a race condition if a checkpoint was running at the same time another thread was closing a database for the last time. [#7604]
  17. Fix several bugs that made multiple filesystem level operations inside a single transaction break. [#7728]
  18. Fix a memory leak in the abort path of a sub-database create. [#7790]
  19. Fix a race condition with file close that could cause NULL pointer deference under load. [#8235]
  20. Fix a bug to correct the calculation of the amount of space needed to return off page duplicates using the DB\_MULTIPLE interface. [#8437]
  21. Fix a bug where the duplicate data item count could be incorrect if a cursor was used to first overwrite and then delete a duplicate which was part of a set of duplicates large enough to have been stored outside the standard access method pages. [#8445]
  22. Fix a bug where The DB\_MULTIPLE interface might fail to return the proper duplicates in some edge cases. [#8485]
  23. Fix a bug where DB->get(...DB\_MULTIPLE) would not return a reasonable estimate of the buffer size required to return a set of duplicates. [#8513]
  24. Fix a bug where the DbCursor.count method could return the wrong count in the case of small (on-page) duplicate sets, where a still-open cursor has been used to delete one of the duplicate data items. [#8851]
  25. Fix a bug where a non-transactional cursor using DB\_MULTIPLE\_KEY could briefly be left pointing at an unlocked page. This could lead to a race condition with another thread deleting records resulting in the wrong record being deleted. [#8926]
  26. Fix a bug where a key/data item could be lost if a cursor is used to do a delete, and then immediately used to do an insert which causes a set of duplicates to be shifted to an off-page Btree. [#9085]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where a deleted item could be left on a database page causing database verification to fail. [#6059]
2. Fix a bug where a page may be left pinned in the cache if a deadlock occurs during a DB->put operation. [#6875]
3. Fix a bug where a deleted record may not be removed from a Btree page if the page is split while another cursor is trying to delete a record on the page. [#6059]
4. Fix a bug where records marked for deletion were incorrectly counted when retrieving in a Btree by record number. [#7133]



5. Fix a bug where a page and lock were left pinned if an application requested a record number past the end of the file when retrieving in a Btree by record number. [#7133]
6. Fix a bug where deleted keys were included in the key count for the DB->stat call. [#7133]
7. Fix a bug where specifying MULTIPLE\_KEY and NEXT\_DUP to the bulk get interfaces might return the wrong data if all the duplicates could not fit in a single buffer. [#7192]
8. Remove assertions that triggered failures that were correct executions. [#8032]
9. Fix a bug where duplicate data items were moved onto overflow pages before it was necessary. [#8082]
10. Fix a bug where the DB->verify method might incorrectly complain about a tree's overflow page reference count. [#8061]
11. Fix a bug that could cause DB\_MULTIPLE on a Btree database to return an incorrect data field at the end of buffer. [#8442]
12. Fix a bug where DBC->c\_count was returning an incorrect count if the cursor was positioned on an item that had just been deleted. [#8851]
13. Remove the test for bt\_maxkey in the Btree put code. If it is set to 1 it can cause an infinite loop. [#8904]

### Hash Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where Hash databases could be corrupted on filesystems that do not zero-fill implicitly created blocks. [#6588]
2. Fix a bug where creating a Hash database with an initial size larger than 4GB would fail. [#6805]
3. Fix a bug where a page in an unused hash bucket might not be empty if there was a disk error while writing the log record for the bucket split. [#7035]
4. Fix a bug where two threads opening a hash database at the same time might deadlock. [#7159]
5. Fix a bug where a hash cursor was not updated properly when doing a put with DB\_NODUPDATA specified. [#7361]
6. Fix a bug that could cause DB\_MULTIPLE\_KEY on Hash databases to return improper results when moving from a key with duplicates to a key without duplicates. [#8442]

### Queue Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where opening an in-memory Queue database with extent size specified will dump core. [#6795]
2. Support auto-commit with the DB->get method's consume operations. [#6954]

3. Fix a bug where calling the sync method on a queue database with extents may hang if there are active consumers. [#7022]
4. Fix a bug where a get(...MULTIPLE...) might lead to an infinite loop or return the wrong record number(s) if there was a deleted record at the beginning of a page or the buffer was filled exactly at the end of a page. [#7064]
5. Fix a bug where a database environment checkpoint might hang if a thread was blocked waiting for a record while doing a DB\_CONSUME\_WAIT on a Queue database. [#7086]
6. Fix a bug where queue extent files would not be removed if a queue with extents was removed and its record numbers wrapped around the maximum record number. [#7191]
7. Fix a bug where a DB->remove of an extent based Queue with a small number of pages per extent would generate a segmentation fault. [#7249]
8. Fix a bug where verify and salvage on queues with extent files did not consider the extent files. [#7294]
9. Fix a bug when transaction timeouts are set in the environment they would get applied to some non-transactional operations and could cause a failure during the abort of a queue operation. [#7641]
10. Fix a bug when the record numbers in a queue database wrap around at 232, a cursor positioned on a record near the head of the queue that is then deleted, may return DB\_NOTFOUND when get is specified with DB\_NEXT rather than the next non-deleted record. [#7979]
11. Fix a bug where a record lock will not be removed when the first record in the queue is deleted without a transaction (not using DB\_CONSUME). [#8434]
12. Fix a bug where byte swapping was not handled properly in queue extent files. [#8358]
13. Fix a bug where Queue extent file pages were not properly typed, causing the extent files not to use encryption or checksums, even if those options had been specified. This fix requires a database upgrade for any affected Queue databases. [#8671]
14. Fix a bug where truncating a queue with extents may fail to remove the last extent file. [#8716]
15. Fix a bug where a rename or remove of a QUEUE database with extents might leave empty extent files behind. [#8729]
16. Fix a bug where on Windows operating systems a "Permission denied" error may be raised if a Queue extent is reopened while it is in the process of being unlinked. [#8710]

### **Recno Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where the DB->truncate method may return the wrong record count if there are deleted records in the database. [#6788]
2. Fix a bug where internal nodes of Recno trees could get wrong record count if a log write failed and the log was later applied during recovery. [#6841]

3. Fix a bug where a cursor next operation could infinitely loop after deleting a record, when the deleted record was immediately followed by implicitly created records. [#8133]

### **C++-specific API Changes:**

1. Document the DB->del method can return DB\_KEYEMPTY for Queue or Recno databases. The C++ and Java APIs now return this value rather than throwing an exception. [#7030]
2. Add "get" methods to retrieve most settings. [#7061]
3. Fix a bug where applications calling DB->verify from the C++ or Java APIs could drop core. Change the DB->verify method API to act as a DB handle destructor. [#7418]
4. Add utility classes for iterating over multiple key and data items returned from a cursor when using the DB\_MULTIPLE or DB\_MULTIPLE\_KEY flags. These classes, DbMultipleDataIterator, DbMultipleKeyDataIterator, and DbMultipleRecnoDataIterator, mirror the DB Java API and are provided as replacements for the C macros, DB\_MULTIPLE\_INIT, DB\_MULTIPLE\_NEXT, DB\_MULTIPLE\_KEY\_NEXT, and DB\_MULTIPLE. [#7351]
5. Fix a bug DbException was thrown, encapsulating DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED, rather than throwing DbLockNotGrantedException. [#7549]
6. Add the DbEnv handle to exceptions thrown by the C++ and Java APIs, where possible. [#7303]
7. Fix a bug in the C++ DbEnv::set\_rep\_transport signature so that the envid parameter is signed. [#8303]
8. Make the fields of DB\_LSN public in the DbLsn class. [#8422]

### **Java-specific API Changes:**

- a. Db.put(), Dbc.get() and Dbc.put() preserve key size
  - b. Dbc.get() returns DB\_KEYEMPTY rather than throwing an exception
  - c. The return type of Db.close() is now void. [#7002]
1. New Java API (com.sleepycat.dbx.\*) for the transactional storage of data using the Java Collections design pattern. [#6569]
  2. Fix a bug in the Java Dbt.get\_recno\_key\_data() method when used inside callbacks. [#6668]
  3. Fix Java DbMpoolStat class to match the DB\_MPOOL\_STAT struct. [#6821]
  4. Fix a bug where Dbc.put expected key data even if the key was unused. [#6932]
  5. Fix a bug in the Java API secondary\_key\_create callback where memory was freed incorrectly, causing JVM crashes. [#6970]

6. Re-implement the Java API to improve performance and maintenance. Fix several inconsistencies in the Java API:
7. Document the DB->del method can return DB\_KEYEMPTY for Queue or Recno databases. The C++ and Java APIs now return this value rather than throwing an exception. [#7030]
8. Add "get" methods to retrieve most settings. [#7061]
9. Add Javadoc documentation to the Berkeley DB release. [#7110]
10. Fix a bug that caused potential memory corruption when using the Java API and specifying the DB\_DBT\_REALLOC flag. [#7215]
11. Add the DbEnv handle to exceptions thrown by the C++ and Java APIs, where possible. [#7303]
12. Map existing c-style API to a more Java camel case API with Java style naming. Retained deprecated older API for the 4.2 release for backwards support in all cases except callback interfaces. Also overloaded methods such as get/pget() into multiple different get() calls to clean up call structure. [#7378]
13. Add CamelCased methods to the Java API. [#7396]
14. Fix a bug where applications calling DB->verify from the C++ or Java APIs could drop core. Change the DB->verify method API to act as a DB handle destructor. [#7418]
15. Fix a bug DbException was thrown, encapsulating DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED, rather than throwing DbLockNotGrantedException. [#7549]
16. Add a toString() method for all Java \*Stat classes (DbBtreeStat, DbHashStat, DbMpoolStat, etc.). This method creates a listing of values of all of the class member variables. [#7712]
17. Remove Db.fd() method from Java API as it has no value to a Java programmer. [#7716]
18. Add an accessible timeout field in the DbLockRequest class, needed for the DB\_LOCK\_GET\_TIMEOUT operation of DbEnv.lockVector. [#8043]
19. Fix replication method calls from Java API. [#8467]
20. Fix a bug where exception returns were inconsistent. [#8622]
21. Change the Java API so that it throws an IllegalArgumentException rather than a DbException with the platform-specific EINVAL. [#8978]

### **Tcl-specific API Changes:**

1. Add "get" methods to retrieve most settings. [#7061]
2. Brought Tcl's \$env set\_flags command up to date with available flags. [#7385]
3. Update Berkeley DB to compile cleanly against the Tcl/Tk 8.4 release. [#7612]

4. Made txn\_checkpoint publicly available. [#8594]

### **RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:**

1. Fix two bugs in the RPC server where incorrect handling of illegal environment home directories caused server crashes. [#7075]
2. Fix a bug where the DB\_ENV->close method would fail in RPC clients if the DB\_ENV->open method was never called. [#8200]

### **Replication Changes:**

1. Write prepare records synchronously on replication clients so that prepare operations are always honored in the case of failure. [#6416]
2. Change replication elections so that the client with the biggest LSN wins, and priority is a secondary factor. [#6568]
3. Fix a bug where replicas could not remove log files because the checkpoint lsn was not being updated properly. [#6620]
4. Force prepare records out to disk regardless of the setting of the DB\_TXN\_NOSYNC flag. [#6614]
5. Add a new flag, DB\_REP\_NOBUFFER, which gets passed to the rep\_send function specified in DBENV->rep\_set\_transport, to indicate that the message should not be buffered on the master, but should be immediately transmitted to the client(s). [#6680]
6. Fix a replication election bug where Berkeley DB could fail to elect a master even if a master already existed. [#6702]
7. Allow environment wide setting of DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT on replication clients. [#6732]
8. Fix a replication bug where a client coming up in the midst of an election might not participate in the election. [#6826]
9. Add log\_flushes when sites become replication masters. If log\_flush fails, panic the environment since the clients already have the commits. [#6873]
10. Fix a replication bug where a brand new client syncing up could generate an error on the master. [#6927]
11. Fix a bug where clients synchronize with the master when they come up with the same master after a client-side disconnect or failures. [#6986]
12. Fix several bugs in replication elections turned up by test rep005. [#6990]
13. Fix a bug where aborted hash group allocations were not properly applied on replicas. [#7039]
14. Fix race conditions between running client recovery and other threads calling replication and other Berkeley DB functions. [#7402] [#8035]

15. Use shared memory region for all replication flags. [#7573]
16. Fix a bug where log archive on clients could prematurely remove log files. [#7659]
17. Return an error if a non-replication dbenv handle attempts to write log records to a replication environment. [#7752]
18. Fix a race condition when clients applied log records, where we would store a log record locally and then never notice we have it, and need to re-request it from the master, causing the client to get far behind the master. [#7765]
19. Fix inconsistencies between the documentation and actual code regarding when replication methods can be called. [#7775]
20. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB would wait forever if a NEWMASTER message got dropped. [#7897]
21. Fix a bug where the master environment ID did not get set when you called DBENV->rep\_start as a master. [#7899]
22. Fix a bug where operations on a queue database will not get replicated if the transactions that include the operations are committed out of order with the operations. [#7904]
23. Fix bugs in log\_c\_get where an invalid LSN could access invalid addresses. Fix bug in elections where a client upgrading to master didn't write a txn\_recycle record. [#7964]
24. Fix a bug where REP\_VERIFY\_FAIL during client recovery wasn't being handled. [#8040]
25. Return an error if the application calls rep\_process\_message before calling rep\_start when starting. [#8057]
26. Fix a bug to ensure that replication generation numbers always increase and are never reset to 1. [#8136]
27. Modify log message retransmission protocol to efficiently handle the case where a large number of contiguous messages were dropped at once. [#8182] [#8169] [#8188]
28. Fix a bug where using the wrong mutex in replication which under certain conditions could cause replication to hang. Also fix a bug where incorrectly setting the checkpoint LSN could cause recovery to take a very long time. [#8183]
29. Fix bug where a message could get sent to an invalid master. [#8184]
30. Fix a bug where a local variable in log\_archive was not initialized. [#8230]
31. Fix a bug where elections could hang. [#8254]
32. Fix a bug to ensure that we can always remove/re-create the temporary replication database after a failure. [#8266]
33. Add a flag, DB\_INIT\_REP to DB\_ENV->open to initialize Replication subsystem. [#8299]

34. Add new `ret_lsn` argument to `rep_process_message` so that LSNs can be returned to clients on permanent records. Add new `lsnp` arg to the `send` callback function so that the master can know the LSNs of records as well. [#8308]
35. Narrow the window where we block due to client recovery. [#8316]
36. Fix a bug in `log_c_incursor` where we would not detect that a record was already in the buffer. [#8330]
37. Fix a bug that would allow elections to be managed incorrectly. [#8360]
38. Fix a bug where replicas were not maintaining `meta->last_pgno` correctly. [#8378]
39. Fix a bug in truncating log after recovery to a timestamp or replication-based recovery. [#8387]
40. Fix a bug where a checkpoint record written as the first record in a log could cause recovery to fail. [#8391]
41. Fix a bug where a client would return `DB_NOTFOUND` instead of `DB_REP_OUTDATED` when it was unable to synchronize with the master because it ran out of log records. [#8399]
42. Fix a bug where log file changes were not handled properly in replication. [#8400] [#8420]
43. Fix a bug where checking for invalid log header data could fail incorrectly. [#8460]
44. Fix a bug where `DB_REP_PERMANENT` was not being set when log records were re-transmitted. [#8473]
45. Modify elections so that all participants elect in the same election generation. [#8590]
46. Fix bug where `rep_apply` was masking an error return. Also return `DB_RUNRECOVERY` if the replication client cannot commit or checkpoint. [#8636]
47. Fix a bug to update the `last_pgno` on the meta page on free as well as alloc. [#8637]
48. Fix a bug to roll back the LSN on a queue database metapage if we're going to truncate the log. Fix a bug in `MASTER_CHECK` so we don't apply log messages from an unknown master. Fix a bug to perform a sync on `rep_close`. [#8601]
49. Fix a bug so that we reset the LSN when putting pages on the free list. [#8685]
50. Fix a bug where replication was not properly calling `db_shalloc`. [#8811]
51. Fix a bug where replication flags were getting set in multiple steps which could cause an Assertion Failure in `log_compare`. [#8889]
52. Fix a bug where open database handles could cause problems on clients. [#8936]
53. Fix a bug where in `dbreg` code where an `fnp` with an invalid `fileid` could be found on the `lp->fq` list. [#8963]
54. Fix a bug where a reader on a replication client could see partial updates when replicating databases with off page duplicates or overflow records. [#9041]

55. Fix a bug that could result in a self deadlock in dbreg under replication. [#9138]

56. Fix a memory leak in replication. [#9255]

### **XA Resource Manager Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where a failed write during XA transaction prepare could result in a checksum error in the log. [#6760]
2. Fix a bug where we were not properly handling DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT in XA transactions and where we were not honoring the XA transaction during an XA-protected open. [#6851]
3. Add infrastructure support for multithreaded XA. [#6865]
4. Display XA status and ID as part of db\_stat -t output. [#6413]

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

- a. failure to remove dirty read locks prior to aborting a transaction,
  - b. calling upgrade on other than WWRITE locks,
  - c. failure to remove expired locks from the locker queue,
  - d. clearing the lock timeout before looking at it. [#7267]
1. Fix a bug where locks were not cleared in an off-page duplicate cursor. [#6950]
  2. Fix a bug where a deadlock may not be detected if dirty reads are enabled and the deadlock involves an aborting transaction. [#7143]
  3. Fix a bug where a transaction doing updates while using dirty read locking might fail while aborting the transaction with a deadlock. Several other locking issues were also fixed:
  4. Fix a bug when dirty reads are enabled a writer might be blocked on a lock that it had previously obtained. Dirty readers would also wait behind regular readers when they could have safely read a page. [#7502]
  5. Fix a bug where a DB->put using CDB gets a lock timeout then the error "Closing already closed cursor". [#7597]
  6. Modify the maximum test-and-set mutex sleep for logical page locks at 10ms, everything else at 25ms. [#7675]
  7. Fix a bug where the DB\_LOCK\_TIMEOUT mode of env->lock\_vec could hang. [#7682]
  8. Fix a bug where running with only transaction timeouts for deadlock detection might deadlock without being detected if more than one transaction times out while trying to avoid searching a Btree on repeated inserts. [#7787]
  9. Fix a bug that could cause detection to not run when there was a lock that should be timed out. [#8588]



10. Fix a bug with using dirty reads with subtransactions. If a writing subtransaction aborts and then is blocked, the deadlock may not be detected. [#9193]
11. Fix a bug where handle locks were not being correctly updated when releasing read locks during transaction prepare. [#9275]

## Logging Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug where if a write error occurred while committing a transaction with DB\_WRITE\_NOSYNC enabled the transaction may appear to be committed in the log while it was really aborted. [#7034]
2. Fix a bug where multiprocess applications could violate write-ahead logging requirements if one process wrote a log record but didn't flush it, the current log file then changed, and another process wrote a database page before the log record was written to disk. [#6999]
3. Fix a bug where fatal recovery could fail with a "Transaction already committed" error if recovery had been run and there are no active transactions in the part of the log following the last checkpoint. [#7234]
4. Fix a bug where recovery would fail to put freed pages onto the free list, when both committed and aborted subtransactions that allocated new pages were present. This only affected prepared transactions. [#7403]
5. Fix a bug where open errors during recovery get propagated unless they are reporting missing files, which might correctly have been removed. [#7578]
6. Fix a bug so that we now validate a log file before writing to it. [#7580]
7. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could display the unnecessary error message "DB\_LOGC->get: short read" during recovery. [#7700]
8. Fix a bug where recovery may fail if it tries to reallocate a page to a file that is out of space. [#7780]
9. Change Berkeley DB so that operations on databases opened in a non-transactional mode do not write records into the database logs. [#7843]
10. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could timeout waiting for locks (on Queue databases) during recovery. [#7927]
11. Fix a bug in truncating log after recovery to a timestamp or replication-based recovery. [#8387]
12. Fix a bug where recovery can be slow if the log contains many opens of files which contain multiple databases. [#8423]
13. Fix a bug where a file id could be used before its open was logged. [#8496]
14. Fix a bug where recovery would partially undo a database create if the transaction which created it spanned log files and not all of the log files were present during recovery. [#9039]

## Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug where checksummed files could not be read on different endian systems. [#6429]
2. Fix a bug where read-only databases were not mapped into memory but were instead read through the Berkeley DB buffer cache. [#6671]
3. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could loop infinitely if the cache was sized so small that all of its pages were simultaneously pinned by the application. [#6681]
4. Fix a bug where DbEnv.sync could fail to write a page if another thread unpinned the page at the same time and there were no other pages in that hash bucket. [#6793]
5. Fix a bug where threads of control may hang if multiple threads of control are opening and closing a database at the same time. [#6953]
6. Fix a bug where a database created without checksums but later opened with checksums would result in a checksum error. [#6959]
7. Fix a bug where a multiprocess application suite could see incorrect data if one process opened a non-checksummed database
8. Change to avoid database open and flush when handles are discarded, if the handle was never used to write anything. [#7232]
9. Fix a bug where applications dirtying the entire cache in a single database operation would see large performance degradation. [#7273]
10. Fix a bug where contention in the buffer pool could cause the buffer allocation algorithm to unnecessarily sleep waiting for buffers to be freed. [#7572]

## Transaction Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug where disk write errors in encrypted database environments, causing transaction abort, could corrupt the log. [#6768]
2. Fix a bug where catastrophic recovery may fail on a log which has a prepared transaction which aborted the allocation of a new page and was rolled forward previously by another recovery session. [#6790]
3. Fix a bug where a transaction that contains a database truncate followed by page allocations, may not properly undo the truncate if aborted. [#6862]
4. Fix a bug which causes Berkeley DB to checkpoint quiescent database environments. [#6933]
5. Fix a bug where if a transaction prepare fails while writing the prepare log record, and it contains a subtransaction which did an allocation later, recovery of the database may fail with a log sequence error. [#6874]
6. Do not abort prepared but not yet completed transactions when closing an environment. [#6993]

7. Fix a bug where operations on the source of a rename in the same transaction would fail. [#7537]
8. Fix a bug where a parent transaction which aborts when it tries to write its commit record could fail with a log sequence error, if the parent transaction has an aborted child transaction which allocated a new page from the operating system. [#7251]
9. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could try to abort a partial transaction because it contained a partial subtransaction. [#7922]
10. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could drop core when transactions were configured without locking support. [#9255]

### Utility Changes:

1. Fix a bug where db\_load could core dump or corrupt record numbers by walking off the end of a string. [#6985]
2. Fix a bug where db\_load could run out of locks when loading large numbers of records. [#7173]
3. Fix a bug where db\_dump could drop core when salvaging unaligned entries on a Btree page. [#7247]
4. Fix a bug where hash statistics did not include overflow items in the count of database data elements. [#7473]
5. Fix a bug where an corruption in an overflow page list could cause DB->verify to infinitely loop. [#7663]
6. Fix a bug where verify could display extraneous error messages when verifying a Btree with corrupt or missing pages. [#7750]
7. Fix a bug that could cause the db\_stat utility to display values larger than 100 for various percentages. [#7779]
8. Fix a memory overflow bug in db\_load. [#8124]
9. Fix a minor leak when verifying queue databases. [#8620]

### Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:

1. Add support for a reduced memory footprint build of the Berkeley DB library. [#1967]
2. Change DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM on Windows to fail immediately when opening an environment whose regions were deleted on last close. [#4882]
3. Update queue.h to current FreeBSD version. [#5494]
4. Support for and certification under Tornado 2.2/VxWorks 5.5. [#5522]
5. Add support for IBM OS/390 using the IBM C compiler. [#6486]

6. Specify `-pthread` as a compile flag for Tru64 systems, not just as a linker flag. [#6637]
7. Remove automatic aggregate initialization for non-ANSI compilers. [#6664]
8. Fix a link error ("GetLongPathNameA could not be located in the dynamic link library KERNEL32.dll") that prevented Berkeley DB from loading on Windows NT. [#6665]
9. Remove use of U suffix in crypto build to denote unsigned integers for non-ANSI compilers. [#6663]
10. Fix Java API documentation problems where API return values were int and should have been void, or vice versa. [#6675]
11. Add an include of `<sys/fcntl.h>` for old Solaris systems with the `directio` call. [#6707]
12. Fix Java API documentation problem where the `Db.associate` call was missing a `DbTxn` handle. [#6714]
13. Clean up source based on gcc's `-Wmissing-prototypes` option. [#6759]
14. Ignore `pread/pwrite` interfaces on NCR's System V R 4.3 system. [#6766]
15. Fix an interface compatibility with Sendmail and Postfix releases. [#6769]
16. Fix warnings when the Tcl API was built without `TEST_CONFIG` defined. [#6789]
17. Change Win32 mutexes to use the shared code for all mutexes to fix handle leak. [#6822] [#6853]
18. Fix the Windows/Tcl API export list for Berkeley DB XML. [#6931]
19. Add the `--enable-mingw` configuration option to build Berkeley DB for MinGW. [#6973]
20. Add a CPU pause to the mutex spinlock code to improve performance on newer Pentium CPUs. [#6975]
21. Upgrade read-only file descriptors to read-write during checkpoint, it's an error to call `FlushFileBuffers` on a read-only Windows file handle. [#7051]
22. Fix `configure` so that Java applications on HP/UX can access RPC environments. [#7066]
23. Update Berkeley DB to use `libtool 1.5` to allow building of shared libraries on various platforms. This should not be visible except for changes to the `Makefile` and internal build procedures. [#7080]
24. Fix a bug where the `configure` script displayed incorrect default installation directory information. [#7081]
25. Fix a signed/unsigned warning with some Windows compilers. [#7100]
26. Fix macro redefinition conflicts between `queue.h` and `Vc7\PlatformSDK\Include\WinNT.h` when building with Visual Studio.NET 7.0. [#7103]

27. Add a loop to retry system calls that return EBUSY. Also limit retries on EINTR to 100 times. [#7118]
28. Fix a bug in our use of GetDiskFreeSpace that caused access violations on some versions of Windows with DB\_DIRECT\_DB. [#7122]
29. Fix a bug where regions in system memory on Windows were incorrectly reinitialized because the magic number was overwritten. [#7127]
30. Change version provided to Tcl's package system to reflect Berkeley DB's major and minor number. [#7174]
31. Support for the Berkeley DB Embedix port has been removed. [#7209]
32. Merge all public C++ headers into db\_cxx.h, which fixes name clashes between Berkeley DB headers and system headers (specifically mutex.h). [#7221]
33. Fix a bug where the configured Makefile could try and build objects for which there were no existing rules. [#7227]
34. Port the ex\_repquote example to Windows. [#7328]
35. Fix a race in the ARM/gcc mutex code which could cause almost anything bad you can imagine. [#7468]
36. Fix a bug where shared region removal could hang. [#7613]
37. Fix a bug so that when using Java in Debug mode on Windows, automatically pick the Debug DLL. [#7722]
38. Fix configure --disable-shared so that it now creates a Makefile that installs static libraries that look the same as a regular shared build. This flag will create a libdb<major>.<minor>.a and make a libdb.a that is a symlink to it. [#7755]
39. Add support for OS/390 2.10 and all versions of z/OS. [#7972]
40. Support Java builds on Windows with spaces in the project path. [#8141]
41. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB mutex locking code for OS X was not multiprocessor safe. [#8255]
42. Add an error to DB\_ENV->set\_flags if the OS does not support Direct
43. Enable verbose error logging from the test suite on Windows. [#8634]
44. Fix a bug with DLL linking on Cygwin under Windows. [#8628]
45. Add support for JDK on HP/UX. [#8813]
46. Fix a bug where pathnames longer than 2KB could cause processes to core dump. [#8886]
47. Fix a bug in VxWorks when yielding the CPU, so that we delay at least one tick. [#9061]

---

# Chapter 17. Upgrading Berkeley DB 4.0 applications to Berkeley DB 4.1

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 4.0 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.1 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## DB\_EXCL

The DB\_EXCL flag to the DB->open() method now works for subdatabases as well as physical files, and it is now possible to use the DB\_EXCL flag to check for the previous existence of subdatabases.

## DB->associate, DB->open, DB->remove, DB->rename

Historic releases of Berkeley DB transaction-protected the DB->open(), DB->remove(), and DB->rename() methods, but did it in an implicit way, that is, applications did not specify the TXN handles associated with the operations. This approach had a number of problems, the most significant of which was there was no way to group operations that included database creation, removal or rename. For example, applications wanting to maintain a list of the databases in an environment in a well-known database had no way to update the well-known database and create a database within a single transaction, and so there was no way to guarantee the list of databases was correct for the environment after system or application failure. Another example might be the creation of both a primary database and a database intended to serve as a secondary index, where again there was no way to group the creation of both databases in a single atomic operation.

In the 4.1 release of Berkeley DB, this is no longer the case. The DB->open() and DB->associate() methods now take a TXN handle returned by DB\_ENV->txn\_begin() as an optional argument. New DB\_ENV->dbremove() and DB\_ENV->dbrename() methods taking a TXN handle as an optional argument have been added.

To upgrade, applications must add a TXN parameter in the appropriate location for the DB->open() method calls, and the DB->associate() method calls (in both cases, the second argument for the C API, the first for the C++ or Java APIs).

Applications wanting to transaction-protect their DB->open() and DB->associate() method calls can add a NULL TXN argument and specify the DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT flag to the two calls, which wraps the operation in an internal Berkeley DB transaction. Applications wanting to transaction-protect the remove and rename operations must rewrite their calls to the DB->remove() and DB->rename() methods to be, instead, calls to the new DB\_ENV->dbremove() and DB\_ENV->dbrename() methods. Applications not wanting to transaction-protect any of the operations can add a NULL argument to their DB->open() and DB->associate() method calls and require no further changes.

For example, an application currently opening and closing a database as follows:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret = db_create(&dbp, dbenv, 0)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;

if ((ret = dbp->open(dbp, "file", NULL, DB_BTREE,
    DB_CREATE, 0664)) != 0) {
    (void)dbp->close(dbp);
    goto err_handler;
}
```

could transaction-protect the DB->open() call as follows:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret = db_create(&dbp, dbenv, 0)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;

if ((ret = dbp->open(dbp,
    NULL, "file", NULL, DB_BTREE, DB_CREATE |
    DB_AUTO_COMMIT, 0664)) != 0) {
    (void)dbp->close(dbp);
    goto err_handler;
}
```

An application currently removing a database as follows:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret = db_create(&dbp, dbenv, 0)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;

if ((ret = dbp->remove(dbp, "file", NULL, 0)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;
```

could transaction-protect the database removal as follows:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret =
    dbenv->dbremove(dbenv, NULL, "file", NULL, DB_AUTO_COMMIT)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;
```

An application currently renaming a database as follows:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret = db_create(&dbp, dbenv, 0)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;

if ((ret = dbp->rename(dbp, "file", NULL, "newname", 0)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;
```

could transaction-protect the database renaming as follows:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret = dbenv->dbrename(
    dbenv, NULL, "file", NULL, "newname", DB_AUTO_COMMIT)) != 0)
    goto err_handler;
```

These examples are the simplest possible translation, and will result in behavior matching that of previous releases. For further discussion on how to transaction-protect `DB->open()` method calls, see [Opening the databases](#).

DB handles that will later be used for transaction-protected operations must be opened within a transaction. Specifying a transaction handle to operations using handles not opened within a transaction will return an error. Similarly, not specifying a transaction handle to operations using handles that were opened within a transaction will also return an error.

## DB\_ENV->log\_register

The `DB_ENV->log_register` and `DB_ENV->log_unregister` interfaces were removed from the Berkeley DB 4.1 release. It is very unlikely application programs used these interfaces. If your application used these interfaces, please contact us for help in upgrading.

## st\_flushcommit

The `DB_ENV->log_stat "st_flushcommits"` statistic has been removed from Berkeley DB, as it is now the same as the `"st_scount"` statistic. Any application using the `"st_flushcommits"` statistic should remove it, or replace it with the `"st_count"` statistic.

## DB\_CHECKPOINT, DB\_CURLSN

The `DB_CHECKPOINT` flag has been removed from the `DB_LOGC->get()` and `DB_ENV->log_put()` methods. It is very unlikely application programs used this flag. If your application used this flag, please contact us for help in upgrading.

The `DB_CURLSN` flag has been removed from the `DB_ENV->log_put()` method. It is very unlikely application programs used this flag. If your application used this flag, please contact us for help in upgrading.



## DB\_INCOMPLETE

The DB\_INCOMPLETE error has been removed from the 4.1 release, and is no longer returned by the Berkeley DB library. Applications no longer need to check for this error return, as the underlying Berkeley DB interfaces that could historically fail to checkpoint or flush the cache and return this error can no longer fail for that reason. Applications should remove all uses of DB\_INCOMPLETE.

Additionally, the DbEnv.checkpoint and Db.sync methods have been changed from returning int to returning void.

## DB\_ENV->memp\_sync

Historical documentation for the DB\_ENV->memp\_sync() method stated:  
In addition, if DB\_ENV->memp\_sync() returns success, the value of `lsn` will be overwritten with the largest log sequence number from any page that was written by DB\_ENV->memp\_sync() to satisfy this request.

This functionality was never correctly implemented, and has been removed in the Berkeley DB 4.1 release. It is very unlikely application programs used this information. If your application used this information, please contact us for help in upgrading.

## DB->stat.hash\_nelem

The `hash_nelem` field of the DB->stat() method for Hash databases has been removed from the 4.1 release, this information is no longer available to applications.

## Java exceptions

The Java DbEnv constructor is now marked with "throws DbException". This means applications must construct DbEnv objects in a context where DbException throwables are handled (either in a try/catch block or in a method that propagates the exception up the stack). Note that previous versions of the Berkeley DB Java API could throw this exception from the constructor but it was not marked.

## C++ exceptions

With default flags, the C++ DbEnv and Db classes can throw exceptions from their constructors. For example, this can happen if invalid parameters are passed in or the underlying C structures could not be created. If the objects are created in an environment that is not configured for exceptions (that is, the DB\_CXX\_NO\_EXCEPTIONS flag is specified), errors from the constructor will be returned when the handle's open method is called.

In addition, the behavior of the DbEnv and Db destructors has changed to simplify exception handling in applications. The destructors will now close the handle if the handle's close method was not called prior to the object being destroyed. The return value of the call is discarded, and no exceptions will be thrown. Applications should call the close method in normal situations so any errors while closing can be handled by the application.

This change allows applications to be structured as follows:

```
try {
  DbEnv env(0);
  env.open(/* ... */);
  Db db(&env, 0);
  db.open(/* ... */);
  /* ... */
  db.close(0);
  env.close(0);
} catch (DbException &dbe) {
  // Handle the exception, the handles have already been closed.
}
```

## Application-specific logging and recovery

The application-specific logging and recovery tools and interfaces have been reworked in the 4.1 release to make it simpler for applications to use Berkeley DB to support their own logging and recovery of non-Berkeley DB objects. Specifically, the `DB_ENV->set_recovery_init` and `DB_ENV->set_tx_recover` interfaces have been removed, replaced by `DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()`. Applications using either of the removed interfaces should be updated to call `DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()`. For more information see Introduction to application specific logging and recovery and the `DB_ENV->set_app_dispatch()` documentation.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.1 release.

All of the access method database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.1 release (Btree/Recno: version 8 to version 9, Hash: version 7 to version 8, and Queue: version 3 to version 4). **The format changes are entirely backward-compatible, and no database upgrades are needed.** Note that databases created using the 4.1 release may not be usable with earlier Berkeley DB releases.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

## Berkeley DB 4.1.24 and 4.1.25 Change Log

### Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. All of the access method database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.1 release (Btree/Recno: version 8 to version 9, Hash: version 7 to version 8, and Queue: version 3 to version 4). *The format changes are entirely backward-compatible, and no database upgrades are needed.*

### Major New Features:

1. Berkeley DB now includes support for database encryption using the AES encryption standard. [#1797]

2. Berkeley DB now includes support for database page checksums to allow detection of database corruption during I/O. [#1797]
3. The shared memory buffer pool code base was substantially reworked in the 4.1 release to improve concurrent throughput. [#4655]

## General Environment Changes:

1. Allow applications to specify transaction handles to the DB->open method call, so database creation can be grouped with other Berkeley DB calls in a single transaction. [#4257]
2. Add the DB\_ENV->remove and DB\_ENV->rename method calls that support transactional protection of database removal and renaming. [#4257]
3. Add the DB\_ENV->set\_flags flags DB\_DIRECT\_DB and DB\_DIRECT\_LOG, which disable the system's buffer cache where possible. [#4526]
4. Unlock the pthread mutex if pthread\_cond\_wait() returns an error. [#4872]
5. Fix a memory leak caused by running recovery. [#4913]
6. Fix a bug in which closing an environment with open database handles could result in application crashes. [#4991]
7. Fix a bug where DB\_CONFIG files were ignored if the database environment defaulted to the application's current working directory. [#5265]
8. Fix a bug where transaction abort or commit could fail to destroy the handle. [#5633]
9. Fix a set of bugs where the Berkeley DB API could return DB\_RUNRECOVERY without panicking the database environment itself or calling the application's panic-callback function. [#5743]
10. Fix a bug in where DB=>rename and DB->remove method calls could leak a transaction and its locks. [#5824]
11. Fix a bug where recovery feedback could return values greater than 100. [#6193]
12. Fix a bug where a page allocated by a transaction, eventually aborted because of application or system failure, could appear twice in the free list, if catastrophic recovery was performed. [#6222]
13. Add a new flag, DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT, that wraps all database modification operations inside a transaction, to the DB\_ENV->set\_flags method. [#6395]
14. Fix a bug where recovery could fail when upgrading between releases. [#6372]
15. Fix a recovery bug where pages that were repeatedly freed and allocated could be lost. [#6479] [#6501]
16. Change DB\_CONFIG reading to handle non-<newline> terminated last line. [#6490]

---

## General Access Method Changes:

1. Allow applications to specify transaction handles to the DB->associate method call, so secondary index creation can be grouped with other Berkeley DB calls in a single transaction. [#4185]
2. Add a new flag, DB\_AUTO\_COMMIT, that wraps single database operations inside a transaction. This flag is supported by the DB->del, DB->open, DB->put, DB->truncate, DB\_ENV->remove, and DB\_ENV->rename methods. [#4257]
3. The DB\_EXCL DB->open method flag has been enhanced to work on subdatabases. [#4257]
4. Fix a bug in which a DB->put(DB\_APPEND) could result in leaked memory or a corruption in the returned record number. [#5002]
5. Fix a bug in the database salvage code that could leave pages pinned in the cache. [#5037]
6. Add a flag to the DB->verify method to output salvaged key/data pairs in printable characters. [#5037]
7. Fix a bug in which DB->verify() might continue and report extraneous database corruption after a fatal error. [#5131]
8. Fix a bug where calling the DB->stat method before the DB->open method could drop core. [#5190]
9. Fix a bug in which a DB->get, DBcursor->c\_get, or DBcursor->c\_pget on a secondary index, in the Concurrent Data Store product, could result in a deadlock. [#5192]
10. Fix a bug in which DB->verify() could correctly report errors but still return success. [#5297]
11. Add support for the DB->set\_cache\_priority interface, that allows applications to set the underlying cache priority for their database files. [#5375]
12. Fix a bug where calling DBcursor->c\_pget with a database that is not a secondary index would drop core. [#5391]
13. Fix a bug where a bug in the DB->truncate method could cause recovery to fail. [#5679]
14. Fix a bug where DB\_GET\_RECNO would fail if specified to a secondary index. [#5811]
15. Fix a bug where building a secondary index for an existing primary database could fail in Concurrent Data Store environments. [#5811]
16. Fix a bug where the DB->rename method could fail, causing a problem during recovery. [#5893]
17. Fix a bug in which a DB->get or DB->pget call on a secondary index could fail when done with a handle shared among multiple threads. [#5899]

18. Fix a bug in which a DB->put operation on a database with off-page duplicates could leak a duplicate cursor, thereby preventing transactions being able to commit. [#5936]
19. Fix a bug where overflow page reference counts were not properly maintained when databases were truncated. [#6168]
20. Fix a bug where the bulk get APIs could allocate large amounts of heap memory. [#6439] [#6520]

### **Btree Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix a bug that prevented loads of sorted data, with duplicates at the end of the tree, from creating compact trees. [#4926]
2. No longer return a copy of the key if the DB\_GET\_BOTH or DB\_GET\_BOTH\_RANGE flags are specified. [#4470]
3. Fix a bug where the fast-search code could hold an unlocked reference to a page, which could lead to recovery failure. [#5518]
4. Fix a bug where some cursor operations on a database, for which the bt\_minkey size had been specified, could fail to use the correct overflow key/data item size. [#6183]
5. Fix a bug where the recovery of an aborted transaction that did a reverse Btree split might leave a page in an inconsistent state. [#6393]

### **Hash Access Method Changes:**

1. Fix bugs that could cause hash recovery to drop core. [#4978]
2. Use access method flags instead of interface flags to check for read-only access to a hash database with an application-specified hash function. [#5121]
3. Fix a bug where a hash database allocation of a new set of buckets may be improperly recovered by catastrophic recovery if the transaction is split across log files and the beginning segment of the transaction is not included in the set of logs to be recovered. [#5942]
4. Fix a bug where aborting particular hash allocations could lead to a database on which the verifier would loop infinitely. [#5966]
5. Fix a bug where a memory allocation failure could result in a system hang. [#5988]
6. Remove nelem from the Hash access method statistics (the value was incorrect once items had been added or removed from the database). [#6101]
7. Fix a bug where a page allocated by an aborted transaction might not be placed on the free list by recovery, if the file holding the page was created as part of recovery, and a later page was part of a hash bucket allocation. [#6184]
8. Fix a bug where allocated pages could be improperly recovered on systems that require explicit zero-ing of filesystem pages. [#6534]

## Queue Access Method Changes:

1. No longer return a copy of the key if the DB\_SET\_RANGE flag is specified. [#4470]
2. Fix a bug where Dbcursor->c\_get (with DB\_MULTIPLE or DB\_MULTIPLE\_KEY specified) could fail on a Queue database if the record numbers had wrapped. [#6397]

## Recno Access Method Changes:

1. No longer return a copy of the key if the DB\_GET\_BOTH or DB\_GET\_BOTH\_RANGE flags are specified. [#4470]
2. Fix a bug where non-transactional locking applications could leak locks when modifying Recno databases. [#5766]
3. Fix a bug where Dbcursor->c\_get with the DB\_GET\_RECNO flag would panic the environment if the cursor was uninitialized. [#5935]
4. Fix a bug where deleting pages from a three-level Recno tree could cause the database environment to panic. [#6232]

## C++-specific API Changes:

1. C++ DbLock::put is replaced by DbEnv::lock\_put to match the C and Java API change in Release 4.0. [#5170]
2. Declared destructors and methods within Db and DbEnv classes to be virtual, making subclassing safer. [#5264]
3. Fixed a bug where Dbt objects with no flags set would not be filled with data by some operations. [#5706]
4. Added DbDeadlockException, DbRunRecoveryException, and DbLockNotGrantedException classes to C++, and throw them accordingly. [#6134]
5. Added C++ methods to support remaining conversions between C++ classes and C structs where appropriate. In particular, DbTxn/DB\_TXN conversions and DbMpoolFile/DB\_MPOOLFILE were added. [#6278]
6. Fix a bug in DbEnv::~DbEnv() that could cause memory corruption if a DbEnv was deleted without being closed. [#6342]
7. Reordered C++ class declarations to avoid a GCC g++ warning about function inlining. [#6406]
8. Fix a bug in the DbEnv destructor that could cause memory corruption when an environment was destroyed without closing first. [#6342]
9. Change DbEnv and Db destructor behavior to close the handle if it was not already closed. [#6342]

## Java-specific API Changes:

1. Added check for system property "sleepycat.Berkeley DB.libfile" that can be used to specify a complete pathname for the JNI shared library. This is needed as a workaround on Mac OS X, where libtool cannot currently create a library with a .jnilib extension which is what the current JDK expects by default. [#5664]
2. Fixed handling of JVM out of memory conditions, when some JNI methods return NULL. When the JVM runs out of memory, calls should consistently fail with OutOfMemoryErrors. [#5995]
3. Added Dbt.get\_object and Dbt.set\_object convenience routines to the Java API to make using serialization easier. [#6113]
4. Fixed a bug that prevented Java's Db.set\_feedback from working, fixed document for Java's Db.set\_feedback, some callback methods were misnamed. [#6137]
5. Fix a NullPointerException in Db.finalize() if the database had been closed. [#6504]
6. Marked DbEnv constructor with "throws DbException". [#6342]

## Tcl-specific API Changes:

None.

## RPC-specific Client/Server Changes:

1. Fix a bug where Db and DbEnv handles were not thread-safe. [#6102]

## Replication Changes:

1. A large number of replication bugs were fixed in this release. The replication support is now believed to be production quality.
2. Add the DB\_ENV->set\_rep\_limit interface, allowing applications to limit the data sent in response to a single DB\_ENV->rep\_process\_message call. [#5999]
3. Add the DB\_ENV->set\_rep\_stat interface, returning information from the replication subsystem [#5919]

## XA Resource Manager Changes:

1. Added support for multithreaded XA. Environments can now have multiple XA transactions active. db\_env\_xa\_attach() can be used to get a DB\_TXN that corresponds to the XA transaction in the current thread. [#5049]
2. Added a com.sleepycat.Berkeley DB.xa package that implements J2EE support for XA. This includes new DbXAResource, DbXid classes that implement the XAResource and Xid interfaces. [#5049]
3. Fix a bug where aborting a prepared transaction after recovery may fail. [#6383]

4. Fix a bug where recovery might fail if a prepared transaction had previously extended the size of a file and then was aborted. [#6387]
5. Fix a bug where if the commit of a prepared transaction fails the transaction would be aborted. [#6389]

### **Locking Subsystem Changes:**

1. Fix a bug where lock counts were incorrect if a lock request returned DB\_LOCK\_NOTGRANTED or an error occurred. [#4923]
2. Fix a bug where lock downgrades were counted as releases, so the lock release statistics could be wrong. [#5762]
3. Fix a bug where the lock and transaction timeout values could not be reset by threads of control joining Berkeley DB database environments. [#5996]
4. Fix a bug where applications using lock and/or transaction timeouts could hit a race condition that would lead to a segmentation fault. [#6061]

### **Logging Subsystem Changes:**

1. DB\_ENV->log\_register and DB\_ENV->log\_unregister have been removed from the interface. [#0046]
2. Fix a bug where creating a database environment with a nonexistent logging directory could drop core. [#5833]
3. Add support allowing applications to change the log file size in existing database environments. [#4875]
4. Fix a bug where a write error on a log record spanning a buffer could cause transaction abort to fail and the database environment to panic. [#5830]

### **Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:**

1. The DB\_INCOMPLETE error has been removed, as cache flushing can no longer return without completing. [#4655]
2. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB might refuse to open a file if the open was attempted while another thread was writing a large buffer. [#4885]
3. Prefer clean buffers to dirty buffers when selecting a buffer for eviction. [#4934]
4. Fix a bug where transaction checkpoint might miss flushing a buffer to disk. [#5033]
5. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB applications could run out of file descriptors. [#5535]
6. Fix bugs where Berkeley DB could self-deadlock on systems requiring mutex resource reclamation after application failure. [#5722] [#6523]



## Transaction Subsystem Changes:

1. Go back only one checkpoint, not two, when performing normal recovery. [#4284]
2. Fix a bug where an abort of a transaction could fail if there was no disk space for the log. [#5740]
3. Fix a bug where the checkpoint log-sequence-number could reference a nonexistent log record. [#5789]
4. Fix a bug where subtransactions which allocated pages from the filesystem and subsequently aborted could cause other pages allocated by sibling transactions to not be freed if the parent transaction then aborted. [#5903]
5. Fix a bug where transactions doing multiple updates to a queue database which spanned a checkpoint could be improperly handled by recovery. [#5898]

## Utility Changes:

1. Fix a bug where the -p option could not be specified with the -R or -r options. [#5037]
2. The utilities were modified to correctly size their private caches in order to handle databases with large page sizes. [#5055]
3. Fix a bug in which utilities run with the -N option would fail to ignore the environment's panic flag. [#5082]
4. Fix a bug where invalid log records could cause db\_printlog to drop core. [#5173]
5. Add a new option to the db\_verify utility to support verification of files that include databases having non-standard sorting or hash functions. [#5237]

## Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:

1. Replace test-and-set mutexes on Windows with a new mutex implementation that signals an event to wake blocked threads. [#4413]
2. Support configuration of POSIX pthread mutexes on systems where the pthread mutexes do not support inter-process locks. [#4942]
3. Add mutex support for the ARM architecture using the gcc compiler. [#5018]
4. On Windows NT/2000/XP, switched to atomic seek-and-read/write operations to improve performance of concurrent reads [#0654].
5. Support cross-compilation using the GNU compiler tool chain. [#4558]
6. Fix a bug where libraries were always installed read-only. [#5096]
7. Fix a bug where temporary files on VxWorks could fail. [#5160]
8. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB did not install correctly if the system cp utility did not support the -f option. [#5111]

9. Correct the documentation for the Queue access method statistics field `qs_cur_recno` to be the "Next available record number". [#5190]
10. Fix a bug where file rename could fail on Windows/9X. [#5223]
11. Removed support for Microsoft Visual Studio 5.0 [#5231]
12. Switched to using HANDLEs for all I/O operations on Windows to overcome a hard limit of 2048 open file descriptors in Microsoft's C runtime library. [#5249]
13. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB error message routines could drop core on the PowerPC and UltraSPARC architectures. [#5331]
14. Rename `OSTREAMCLASS` to `__DB_OSTREAMCLASS` in `db_cxx.h` to avoid stepping on application name space. [#5402]
15. Support Linux on the S/390 architecture. [#5608]
16. Work around a bug in Solaris where the `pthread_cond_wait` call could return because a signal was delivered to the application. [#5640]
17. Fix build line for loadable libraries to include `-module` to support Mac OS X. [#5664]
18. Fix a bug in the PPC mutex support for the Mac OS X system. [#5781]
19. Added support for Java on Mac OS X. A workaround on the Java command line is currently necessary; it is documented. [#5664]
20. Added support for Tcl on Mac OS X. [#5664]
21. Update Windows build instructions to cover Visual C++ .NET. [#5684]
22. AIX configuration changes for building on AIX 4.3.3 and 5 with both standard and Visual Age compilers. [#5779]
23. Add a new UNIX configuration argument, `--with-mutex=MUTEX`, to allow applications to select a mutex implementation. [#6040]
24. Changed `libtool` and `configure` so we can now correctly build and install Tcl and Java loadable shared libraries that work on Mac OS X. [#6117]
25. Fix mutex alignment problems on historic HP-UX releases that could make multiprocess applications fail. [#6250]
26. Installed static `.a` archives on Mac OS X need to be built with the `ranlib -c` option so linked applications will not see undefined `__db_jump` errors. [#6215]
27. Upgrade `pthread` and `mmap` support in the `uClibc` library to support Berkeley DB. [#6268]
28. Fixed error in determining include directories during configuration for `--enable-java`. The error can cause compilation errors on certain systems with newer versions of `gcc`. [#6445]

## **Berkeley DB 4.1.25 Change Log**

Berkeley DB version 4.1.25 is version 4.1.24 with all public patches applied. There were no public interface changes or new features.

---

# Chapter 18. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.3 applications to Berkeley DB 4.0

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 3.3 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 4.0 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## db\_deadlock

The `-w` option to the `db_deadlock` utility has been deprecated. Applications can get the functionality of the `-w` option by using the `-t` option with an argument of `.100000`.

## lock\_XXX

The C API for the Berkeley DB Locking subsystem was reworked in the 4.0 release as follows:

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
<code>lock_detect</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_detect()</code>
<code>lock_get</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_get()</code>
<code>lock_id</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_id()</code>
<code>lock_put</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_put()</code>
<code>lock_stat</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_stat()</code>
<code>lock_vec</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;lock_vec()</code>

Applications calling any of these functions should update their calls to use the enclosing `DB_ENV` handle's method (easily done as the first argument to the existing call is the correct handle to use).

In addition, the `DB_ENV->lock_stat()` call has been changed in the 4.0 release to take a `flags` argument. To leave their historic behavior unchanged, applications should add a final argument of `0` to any calls made to `DB_ENV->lock_stat()`.

The C++ and Java APIs for the `DbLock::put` (`DbLock.put`) method was reworked in the 4.0 release to make the lock put interface a method of the `DB_ENV` handle rather than the `DbLock` handle. Applications calling the `DbLock::put` or `DbLock.put` method should update their calls to use the enclosing `DB_ENV` handle's method (easily done as the first argument to the existing call is the correct handle to use).

## log\_XXX

The C API for the Berkeley DB Logging subsystem was reworked in the 4.0 release as follows:

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
<code>log_archive</code>	<code>DB_ENV-&gt;log_archive()</code>

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
log_file	DB_ENV->log_file()
log_flush	DB_ENV->log_flush()
log_get	DB_ENV->log_cursor()
log_put	DB_ENV->log_put()
log_register	DB_ENV->log_register
log_stat	DB_ENV->log_stat()
log_unregister	DB_ENV->log_unregister

Applications calling any of these functions should update their calls to use the enclosing DB\_ENV class handle's method (in all cases other than the log\_get call, this is easily done as the first argument to the existing call is the correct handle to use).

Application calls to the historic log\_get function must be replaced with the creation of a log file cursor (a DB\_LOGC class object), using the DB\_ENV->log\_cursor() method to retrieve log records and calls to the DB\_LOGC->close() method to destroy the cursor. It may also be possible to simplify some applications. In previous releases of Berkeley DB, the DB\_CURRENT, DB\_NEXT, and DB\_PREV flags to the log\_get function could not be used by a free-threaded DB\_ENV class handle. If their DB\_ENV class handle was free-threaded, applications had to create an additional, unique environment handle by separately calling DB\_ENV->open(). This is no longer an issue in the log cursor interface, and applications may be able to remove the now unnecessary creation of the additional DB\_ENV class object.

Finally, the DB\_ENV->log\_stat() call has been changed in the 4.0 release to take a flags argument. To leave their historic behavior unchanged, applications should add a final argument of 0 to any calls made to DB\_ENV->log\_stat().

## memp\_XXX

The C API for the Berkeley DB Memory Pool subsystem was reworked in the 4.0 release as follows:

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
memp_register	DB_ENV->memp_register()
memp_stat	DB_ENV->memp_stat()
memp_sync	DB_ENV->memp_sync()
memp_trickle	DB_ENV->memp_trickle()
memp_fopen	DB_ENV->memp_fcreate()
DB_MPOOL_FINFO: ftype	DB_MPOOLFILE->set_ftype()
DB_MPOOL_FINFO: pgcookie	DB_MPOOLFILE->set_pgcookie()
DB_MPOOL_FINFO: fileid	DB_MPOOLFILE->set_fileid()
DB_MPOOL_FINFO: lsn_offset	DB_MPOOLFILE->set_lsn_offset()
DB_MPOOL_FINFO: clear_len	DB_MPOOLFILE->set_clear_len()

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
memp_fopen	DB_MPOOLFILE->open()
memp_fclose	DB_MPOOLFILE->close()
memp_fput	DB_MPOOLFILE->put()
memp_fset	DB_MPOOLFILE->set
memp_fsync	DB_MPOOLFILE->sync()

Applications calling any of the `memp_register`, `memp_stat`, `memp_sync` or `memp_trickle` functions should update those calls to use the enclosing `DB_ENV` class handle's method (easily done as the first argument to the existing call is the correct `DB_ENV` class handle).

In addition, the `DB_ENV->memp_stat()` call has been changed in the 4.0 release to take a `flags` argument. To leave their historic behavior unchanged, applications should add a final argument of 0 to any calls made to `DB_ENV->memp_stat()`.

Applications calling the `memp_fopen` function should update those calls as follows: First, acquire a Cache chapter handle using the `DB_ENV->memp_fcreate()` method. Second, if the `DB_MPOOL_FINFO` structure reference passed to the `memp_fopen` function was non-NULL, call the Cache chapter method corresponding to each initialized field in the `DB_MPOOL_FINFO` structure. Third, call the `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` method method to open the underlying file. If the `DB_MPOOLFILE->open()` method call fails, then `DB_MPOOLFILE->close()` method must be called to destroy the allocated handle.

Applications calling the `memp_fopen`, `memp_fclose`, `memp_fput`, `memp_fset`, or `memp_fsync` functions should update those calls to use the enclosing Cache chapter handle's method. Again, this is easily done as the first argument to the existing call is the correct Cache chapter handle. With one exception, the calling conventions of the old and new interfaces are identical; the one exception is the `DB_MPOOLFILE->close()` method, which requires an additional `flag` parameter that should be set to 0.

## txn\_XXX

The C API for the Berkeley DB Transaction subsystem was reworked in the 4.0 release as follows:

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
txn_abort	DB_TXN->abort()
txn_begin	DB_ENV->txn_begin()
txn_checkpoint	DB_ENV->txn_checkpoint()
txn_commit	DB_TXN->commit()
txn_discard	DB_TXN->discard()
txn_id	DB_TXN->id()
txn_prepare	DB_TXN->prepare()
txn_recover	DB_TXN->recover()

Historic functional interface	Berkeley DB 4.X method
txn_stat	DB_TXN->stat()

Applications calling any of these functions should update their calls to use the enclosing DB\_ENV class handle's method (easily done as the first argument to the existing call is the correct handle to use).

As a special case, since applications might potentially have many calls to the txn\_abort, txn\_begin and txn\_commit functions, those functions continue to work unchanged in the Berkeley DB 4.0 release.

In addition, the DB\_TXN->stat() call has been changed in the 4.0 release to take a flags argument. To leave their historic behavior unchanged, applications should add a final argument of 0 to any calls made to DB\_TXN->stat().

## db\_env\_set\_XXX

The db\_env\_set\_region\_init function was removed in the 4.0 release and replaced with the DB\_REGION\_INIT flag to the DB\_ENV->set\_flags() method. This is an interface change: historically, the db\_env\_set\_region\_init function operated on the entire Berkeley DB library, not a single environment. The new method only operates on a single DB\_ENV class handle (and any handles created in the scope of that handle). Applications calling the db\_env\_set\_region\_init function should update their calls: calls to the historic routine with an argument of 1 (0) are equivalent to calling DB\_ENV->set\_flags() with the DB\_REGION\_INIT flag and an argument of 1 (0).

The db\_env\_set\_tas\_spins function was removed in the 4.0 release and replaced with the DB\_ENV->set\_tas\_spins method. This is an interface change: historically, the db\_env\_set\_tas\_spins function operated on the entire Berkeley DB library, not a single environment. The new method only operates on a single DB\_ENV class handle (and any handles created in the scope of that handle). Applications calling the db\_env\_set\_tas\_spins function should update their calls: calls to the historic routine are equivalent to calling DB\_ENV->set\_tas\_spins with the same argument. In addition, for consistent behavior, all DB\_ENV class handles opened by the application should make the same configuration call, or the value will need to be entered into the environment's DB\_CONFIG file.

Also, three of the standard Berkeley DB debugging interfaces changed in the 4.0 release. It is quite unlikely that Berkeley DB applications use these interfaces.

The DB\_ENV->set\_mutexlocks method was removed in the 4.0 release and replaced with the DB\_NO\_LOCKING flag to the DB\_ENV->set\_flags() method. Applications calling the DB\_ENV->set\_mutexlocks method should update their calls: calls to the historic routine with an argument of 1 (0) are equivalent to calling DB\_NO\_LOCKING flag and an argument of 1 (0).

The db\_env\_set\_pageyield function was removed in the 4.0 release and replaced with the DB\_YIELDCPU flag to the DB\_ENV->set\_flags() method. This is an interface change: historically, the db\_env\_set\_pageyield function operated on the entire Berkeley DB library, not a single environment. The new method only operates on a single DB\_ENV class handle (and any handles created in the scope of that handle). Applications calling the db\_env\_set\_pageyield

function should update their calls: calls to the historic routine with an argument of 1 (0) are equivalent to calling `DB_ENV->set_flags()` with the `DB_YIELDCPU` flag and an argument of 1 (0). In addition, all `DB_ENV` class handles opened by the application will need to make the same call, or the `DB_YIELDCPU` flag will need to be entered into the environment's `DB_CONFIG` file.

The `db_env_set_panicstate` function was removed in the 4.0 release, replaced with the `DB_PANIC_ENVIRONMENT` flags to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method. (The `DB_PANIC_ENVIRONMENT` flag will cause an environment to panic, affecting all threads of control using that environment. The `DB_ENV->set_flags()` handle to ignore the current panic state of the environment.) This is an interface change: historically the `db_env_set_panicstate` function operated on the entire Berkeley DB library, not a single environment. Applications calling the `db_env_set_panicstate` function should update their calls, replacing the historic call with a call to `DB_ENV->set_flags()` and the appropriate flag, depending on their usage of the historic interface.

## DB\_ENV->set\_server

The `DB_ENV->set_server()` method has been replaced with the `DB_ENV->set_rpc_server()` method. The `DB_ENV->set_server()` method can be easily converted to the `DB_ENV->set_rpc_server()` method by changing the name, and specifying a `NULL` for the added argument, second in the argument list.

## DB\_ENV->set\_lk\_max

The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max` method has been deprecated in favor of the `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_locks()`, `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_lockers()`, and `DB_ENV->set_lk_max_objects()` methods. The `DB_ENV->set_lk_max` method continues to be available, but is no longer documented and is expected to be removed in a future release.

## DB\_ENV->lock\_id\_free

A new locker ID related API, the `DB_ENV->lock_id_free()` method, was added to Berkeley DB 4.0 release. Applications using the `DB_ENV->lock_id()` method to allocate locker IDs may want to update their applications to free the locker ID when it is no longer needed.

## Java CLASSPATH environment variable

The Berkeley DB Java class files are now packaged as jar files. In the 4.0 release, the `CLASSPATH` environment variable must change to include at least the `db.jar` file. It can optionally include the `dbexamples.jar` file if you want to run the examples. For example, on UNIX:

```
export CLASSPATH="/usr/local/BerkeleyDB.4.8/lib/db.jar: \
/usr/local/BerkeleyDB.4.8/lib/dbexamples.jar"
```

For example, on Windows:

```
set CLASSPATH="D:\db\build_windows\Release\db.jar;
```



```
D:\db\build_windows\Release\dbexamples.jar"
```

For more information on Java configuration, please see [Java configuration](#) and [Building the Java API \(page 19\)](#).

## C++ ostream objects

In the 4.0 release, the Berkeley DB C++ API has been changed to use the ISO standard C++ API in preference to the older, less portable interfaces, where available. This means the Berkeley DB methods that used to take an ostream object as a parameter now expect a `std::ostream`. Specifically, the following methods have changed:

```
DbEnv::set_error_stream  
Db::set_error_stream  
Db::verify
```

On many platforms, the old and the new C++ styles are interchangeable; on some platforms (notably Windows systems), they are incompatible. If your code uses these methods and you have trouble with the 4.0 release, you should update code that looks like this:

```
#include <iostream.h>  
#include <db_cxx.h>  
  
void foo(Db db) {  
    db.set_error_stream(&cerr);  
}
```

to look like this:

```
#include <iostream>  
#include <db_cxx.h>  
  
using std::cerr;  
  
void foo(Db db) {  
    db.set_error_stream(&cerr);  
}
```

## application-specific recovery

If you have created your own logging and recovery routines, you may need to upgrade them to the Berkeley DB 4.0 release.

First, you should regenerate your logging, print, read and the other automatically generated routines, using the `dist/gen_rec.awk` tool included in the Berkeley DB distribution.

Next, compare the template file code generated by the `gen_rec.awk` tool against the code generated by the last release in which you built a template file. Any changes in the templates should be incorporated into the recovery routines you have written.

Third, if your recovery functions refer to `DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL` (that is, your code checks for that particular operation code), you should replace it with `DB_REDO(op)` which compares

the operation code to both DB\_TXN\_FORWARD\_ROLL and DB\_TXN\_APPLY. (DB\_TXN\_APPLY is a potential value for the operation code as of the 4.0 release.)

Finally, if you have created your own logging and recovery routines, we recommend you contact us and ask us to review those routines for you.

## Upgrade Requirements

The log file format changed in the Berkeley DB 4.0 release. No database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 4.0 release.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

### 4.0.14 Change Log

#### Major New Features:

1. Group commit. [#42]
2. Single-master replication. [#44]
3. Support for VxWorks AE; Vxworks support certified by WindRiver Systems Inc. [#4401]

#### General Environment Changes:

1. The db\_env\_set\_pageyield interface has been replaced by a new flag (DB\_YIELDCPU) for the DB\_ENV->set\_flags interface.
2. The db\_env\_set\_panicstate interface has been replaced by a new flag (DB\_PANIC\_STATE) for the DB\_ENV->set\_flags interface.
3. The db\_env\_set\_region\_init interface has been replaced by a new flag (DB\_REGION\_INIT) for the DB\_ENV->set\_flags interface.
4. The db\_env\_set\_tas\_spins interface has been replaced by the DB\_ENV->set\_tas\_spins method.
5. The DB\_ENV->set\_mutexlocks interface has been replaced by a new flag (DB\_NOLOCKING) for the DB\_ENV->set\_flags interface.
6. Fix a bug where input values from the DB\_CONFIG file could overflow.
7. The C API lock, log, memory pool and transaction interfaces have been converted to method based interfaces; see the Upgrade documentation for specific details. [#920]
8. Fix a bug in which some DB\_ENV configuration information could be lost by a failed DB\_ENV->open command. [#4608]
9. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could fail if the application attempted to allocate new database pages while the system was unable to write new log file buffers. [#4928]

### General Access Method Changes:

1. Add a new flag (DB\_GET\_BOTH\_RANGE) that adds support for range searches within sorted duplicate data sets. [#3378]
2. Fix a bug in which the DB->get or DB->pget methods, when used with secondary indices, could incorrectly leave an internally-created database cursor open. [#4465]
3. The DB->set\_alloc method can no longer be called when the database is part of a database environment. [#4599]

### Btree Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where a lock could be leaked when a thread calling DB->stat on a Btree database was selected to resolve a deadlock. [#4509]

### Hash Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where bulk return using the MULTIPLE\_KEY flag on a Hash database would only return entries from a single bucket. [#4313]

### Queue Access Method Changes:

1. Delete extent files whenever the leading record is deleted, instead of only when a DB\_CONSUME operation was performed. [#4307]

### Recno Access Method Changes:

1. Fix a bug where the delete of a record in a Recno database could leak a lock in non-transactional applications. [#4351]
2. Fix a bug where the DB\_THREAD flag combined with a backing source file could cause an infinite loop. [#4581]

### C++ API Changes:

### Java API Changes:

1. Added implementation of DbEnv.lock\_vec for Java. [#4094] Added some minimal protection so that the same Java Dbt cannot be used twice in the same API call, this will often catch multithreading programming errors with Dbts. [#4094]
2. Fix a bug in which a Db.put call with the Db.DB\_APPEND would fail to correctly return the newly put record's record number. [#4527]
3. Fixed problems occurring in multithreaded java apps that use callbacks. [#4467]

### Tcl API Changes:

1. Fix a bug in which large integers could be handled incorrectly by the Tcl interface on 64-bit machines. [#4371]

## RPC Client/Server Changes:

1. The DB\_ENV->set\_server interface has been removed.

## XA Resource Manager Changes:

## Locking Subsystem Changes:

1. The C++ (Java) API DbLock::put (DbLock.put) method has been changed to be a method off the DbEnv handle rather than the DbLock handle.
2. Locker IDs may now wrap-around. [#864]
3. Explicitly allocated locker IDs must now be freed. [#864]
4. Add per-environment, per-lock and per-transaction interfaces to support timeout based lock requests and "deadlock" detection. [#1855]
5. Add support for interrupting a waiting locker. [#1976]
6. Implemented DbEnv.lock\_vec for Java. [#4094]

## Logging Subsystem Changes:

1. Fix a bug where the size of a log file could not be set to the default value. [#4567]
2. Fix a bug where specifying a non-default log file size could cause other processes to be unable to join the environment and read its log files. [#4567]
3. Fix a bug where Berkeley DB could keep open file descriptors to log files returned by the DB\_ENV->log\_archive method (or the db\_archive utility), making it impossible to move or remove them on Windows systems. [#3969]
4. Replace the log\_get interface with a cursor into the log file. [#0043]

## Memory Pool Subsystem Changes:

1. Add the DB\_ODDFILESIZE flag to the DB\_MPOOLFILE->open method supporting files not a multiple of the underlying page size in length.
2. Convert memp\_XXX functional interfaces to a set of methods, either base methods off the DB\_ENV handle or methods off of a DB\_MPOOLFILE handle. [#920]
3. Add the DB\_ODDFILESIZE flag to the DB\_MPOOLFILE->open method supporting files not a multiple of the underlying page size in length.
4. Fix a bug where threads of control could deadlock opening a database environment with multiple memory pool caches. [#4696]
5. Fix a bug where the space needed for per-file memory pool statistics was incorrectly calculated. [#4772]

## Transaction Subsystem Changes:

1. Transaction IDs may now wrap-around. [#864]
2. Release read locks before performing logging operations at commit. [#4219]

## Utility Changes:

1. Fix a bug in which the db\_dump utility would incorrectly attach to transaction, locking, or logging regions when salvaging, and thus could not be used to salvage databases in environments where these regions were present. [#4305]
2. Fix a bug in which the DB salvager could produce incorrectly formatted output for certain classes of corrupt database. [#4305]
3. Fix a bug in which the DB salvager could incorrectly salvage files containing multiple databases. [#4305]
4. Fix a bug where unprintable characters in subdatabase names could cause a dump of a database that could not then be loaded. [#4688]
5. Increase the size of the cache created by the db\_stat and db\_verify utilities to avoid failure on large databases. [#4688] [#4787]
6. Fix a bug in which a database verification performed with the DB\_ORDERCHKONLY flag could fail incorrectly. [#4757]
7. Fix a bug which caused db\_stat to display incorrect information about GB size caches. [#4812]

## Database or Log File On-Disk Format Changes:

1. The on-disk log format changed.

## Configuration, Documentation, Portability and Build Changes:

1. Fix a bug where Win9X systems region names could collide.
2. Fix a bug where configuring Berkeley DB to build the C++ API without also configuring for a shared library build would fail to build the C++ library. [#4343]
3. Change Berkeley DB installation to not strip binaries if --enable-debug was specified as a configuration option. [#4318]
4. Add the -pthread flag to AIX, FreeBSD and OSF/1 library loads. [#4350]
5. Fix a bug where the Berkeley DB 1.85 compatibility API failed to load in the 3.3.11 release. [#4368]
6. Port the Berkeley DB utility programs to the VxWorks environment. [#4378]
7. Made change to configuration so that dynamic libraries link correctly when C++ is used on AIX. [#4381]

8. Fix a variety of problems that prevented the Berkeley DB source tree from building on systems without ANSI C compiler support (for example, SunOS 4.X). [#4398]
9. Added missing DbMultiple\*Iterator Java files to Makefile.in. [#4404]
10. Fix a bug that could prevent the db\_dump185 utility from dumping Berkeley DB version 1.86 hash databases. [#4418]
11. Reduce the number of calls setting the errno value, to improve performance on Windows/NT in MT environments. [#4432]
12. Fix for Darwin (and probably some other) OS's that were getting 'yes' or other garbage in generated makefiles in place of a shared library name. [#4453]
13. C++: Remove inlining for constructor of tmpString internal class. This fixes warnings on Solaris profiling builds. [#4473]
14. DB now restarts system calls that are interrupted by signals. [#4480]
15. Fixed warnings for compiling Java native code on Solaris and OSF/1. [#4571]
16. Added better configuration for Java on Tru64 (OSF/1), Solaris,
17. Java files are now built as jar files. Berkeley DB classes are put into db.jar (which is an installed file on UNIX) and examples are put into dbexamples.jar. The classes directory is now a subdirectory of the build directory, rather than in java/classes. [#4575]
18. Support Cygwin installation process. [#4611]
19. Correct the Java secondary\_key\_create method signature. [#4777]
20. Export additional Berkeley DB interfaces on Windows to support application-specific logging and recovery. [#4827]
21. Always complain when using version 2.96 of the gcc compiler. [#4878]
22. Add compile and load-time flags to configure for threads on UnixWare and OpenUNIX. [#4552] [#4950]

---

# Chapter 19. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.2 applications to Berkeley DB 3.3

## introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 3.2 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 3.3 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## DB\_ENV->set\_server

The DB\_ENV->set\_server method has been deprecated and replaced with the DB\_ENV->set\_rpc\_server() method. The DB\_ENV->set\_server method will be removed in a future release, and so applications using it should convert. The DB\_ENV->set\_server method can be easily converted to the DB\_ENV->set\_rpc\_server() method by changing the name, and specifying a NULL for the added argument, second in the argument list.

## DB->get\_type

The DB->get\_type() method can return an error in the Berkeley DB 3.3 release, and so requires an interface change. C and C++ applications calling DB->get\_type() should be changed to treat the method's return as an error code, and to pass an additional second argument of type DBTYPE \* to the method. The additional argument is used as a memory location in which to store the requested information.

## DB->get\_byteswapped

The DB->get\_byteswapped() method can return an error in the Berkeley DB 3.3 release, and so requires an interface change. C and C++ applications calling DB->get\_byteswapped() should be changed to treat the method's return as an error code, and to pass an additional second argument of type int \* to the method. The additional argument is used as a memory location in which to store the requested information.

## DB->set\_malloc, DB->set\_realloc

There are two new methods in the Berkeley DB 3.3 release: DB\_ENV->set\_alloc(). These functions allow applications to specify a set of allocation functions for the Berkeley DB library to use when allocating memory to be owned by the application and when freeing memory that was originally allocated by the application.

The new methods affect or replace the following historic methods:

### DB->set\_malloc

The DB->set\_malloc method has been replaced in its entirety. Applications using this method should replace the call with a call to DB->set\_alloc().

### DB->set\_realloc

The DB->set\_realloc method has been replaced in its entirety. Applications using this method should replace the call with a call to DB->set\_alloc().

#### **DB->stat() method**

has been replaced. Applications using this method should do as follows: if the argument is NULL, it should simply be removed. If non-NULL, it should be replaced with a call to DB->set\_alloc().

#### **lock\_stat**

The historic **db\_malloc** argument to the lock\_stat function has been replaced. Applications using this function should do as follows: if the argument is NULL, it should simply be removed. If non-NULL, it should be replaced with a call to DB\_ENV->set\_alloc().

#### **log\_archive**

The historic **db\_malloc** argument to the log\_archive function has been replaced. Applications using this function should do as follows: if the argument is NULL, it should simply be removed. If non-NULL, it should be replaced with a call to DB\_ENV->set\_alloc().

#### **log\_stat**

The historic **db\_malloc** argument to the log\_stat function has been replaced. Applications using this function should do as follows: if the argument is NULL, it should simply be removed. If non-NULL, it should be replaced with a call to DB\_ENV->set\_alloc().

#### **memp\_stat**

The historic **db\_malloc** argument to the memp\_stat function has been replaced. Applications using this function should do as follows: if the argument is NULL, it should simply be removed. If non-NULL, it should be replaced with a call to DB\_ENV->set\_alloc().

#### **txn\_stat**

The historic **db\_malloc** argument to the txn\_stat function has been replaced. Applications using this function should do as follows: if the argument is NULL, it should simply be removed. If non-NULL, it should be replaced with a call to DB\_ENV->set\_alloc().

One potential incompatibility for historic applications is that the allocation functions for a database environment must now be set before the environment is opened. Historically, Berkeley DB applications could open the environment first, and subsequently call the DB->set\_malloc and DB->set\_realloc methods; that use is no longer supported.

## **DB\_LOCK\_CONFLICT**

The DB\_LOCK\_CONFLICT flag has been removed from the lock\_detect function. Applications specifying the DB\_LOCK\_CONFLICT flag should simply replace it with a flags argument of 0.

## **memp\_fget, EIO**

Previous releases of Berkeley DB returned the system error EIO when the memp\_fget function was called to retrieve a page, the page did not exist, and the DB\_MPOOL\_CREATE flag was not set. In the 3.3 release, the error DB\_PAGE\_NOTFOUND is returned instead, to allow applications to distinguish between recoverable and non-recoverable errors. Applications calling the



memp\_fget function and checking for a return of EIO should check for DB\_PAGE\_NOTFOUND instead.

Previous releases of Berkeley DB treated filesystem I/O failure (the most common of which the filesystem running out of space), as a fatal error, returning DB\_RUNRECOVERY. When a filesystem failure happens in the 3.3 release Berkeley DB returns the underlying system error (usually EIO), but can continue to run. Applications should abort any enclosing transaction when a recoverable system error occurs in order to recover from the error.

## txn\_prepare

An additional argument has been added to the txn\_prepare function. If your application calls txn\_prepare (that is, is performing two-phase commit using Berkeley DB as a local resource manager), see the section titled *Distributed Transactions* in versions of this book that existed prior to release 4.8.

## --enable-dynamic, --enable-shared

In previous releases, Berkeley DB required separate configuration and builds to create both static and shared libraries. This has changed in the 3.3 release, and Berkeley DB now builds and installs both shared and static versions of the Berkeley DB libraries by default. This change was based on Berkeley DB upgrading to release 1.4 of the GNU Project's Libtool distribution. For this reason, Berkeley DB no longer supports the previous --enable-dynamic and --enable-shared configuration options. Instead, as Berkeley DB now builds both static and shared libraries by default, the useful options are Libtool's --disable-shared and --disable-static options.

## --disable-bigfile

In previous releases, Berkeley DB UNIX used the --disable-bigfile configuration option for systems that could not, for whatever reason, include large file support in a particular Berkeley DB configuration. However, large file support has been integrated into the autoconf configuration tool as of version 2.50. For that reason, Berkeley DB configuration no longer supports --disable-bigfile, the autoconf standard --disable-largefile should be used instead.

## Upgrade Requirements

No database formats or log file formats changed in the Berkeley DB 3.3 release.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

---

# Chapter 20. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.1 applications to Berkeley DB 3.2

## introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 3.1 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 3.2 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## DB\_ENV->set\_flags

A new method has been added to the Berkeley DB environment handle, `DB_ENV->set_flags()`. This method currently takes three flags: `DB_CDB_ALLDB`, `DB_NOMMAP`, and `DB_TXN_NOSYNC`. The first of these flags, `DB_CDB_ALLDB`, provides new functionality, allowing Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store applications to do locking across multiple databases.

The other two flags, `DB_NOMMAP` and `DB_TXN_NOSYNC`, were specified to the `DB_ENV->open()` method in previous releases. In the 3.2 release, they have been moved to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method because this allows the database environment's value to be toggled during the life of the application as well as because it is a more appropriate place for them. Applications specifying either the `DB_NOMMAP` or `DB_TXN_NOSYNC` flags to the `DB_ENV->open()` method should replace those flags with calls to the `DB_ENV->set_flags()` method.

## DB callback functions, app\_private field

In the Berkeley DB 3.2 release, four application callback functions (the callback functions set by `DB->set_bt_compare()`, `DB->set_bt_prefix()`, `DB->set_dup_compare()` and `DB->set_h_hash()`) were modified to take a reference to a DB object as their first argument. This change allows the Berkeley DB Java API to reasonably support these interfaces. There is currently no need for the callback functions to do anything with this additional argument.

C and C++ applications that specify their own Btree key comparison, Btree prefix comparison, duplicate data item comparison or Hash functions should modify these functions to take a reference to a DB structure as their first argument. No further change is required.

The `app_private` field of the DBT structure (accessible only from the Berkeley DB C API) has been removed in the 3.2 release. It was replaced with `app_private` fields in the `DB_ENV` handles. Applications using this field will have to convert to using one of the replacement fields.

## Logically renumbering records

In the Berkeley DB 3.2 release, cursor adjustment semantics changed for Recno databases with mutable record numbers. Before the 3.2 release, cursors were adjusted to point to the previous or next record at the time the record to which the cursor referred was deleted. This could lead to unexpected behaviors. For example, two cursors referring to sequential records that were both deleted would lose their relationship to each other and would refer to the same position in the database instead of their original sequential relationship. There were

also command sequences that would have unexpected results. For example, `DB_AFTER` and `DB_BEFORE` cursor put operations, using a cursor previously used to delete an item, would perform the put relative to the cursor's adjusted position and not its original position.

In the Berkeley DB 3.2 release, cursors maintain their position in the tree regardless of deletion operations using the cursor. Applications that perform database operations, using cursors previously used to delete entries in Recno databases with mutable record numbers, should be evaluated to ensure that the new semantics do not cause application failure.

## DB\_INCOMPLETE

There are a number of functions that flush pages from the Berkeley DB shared memory buffer pool to disk. Most of those functions can potentially fail because a page that needs to be flushed is not currently available. However, this is not a hard failure and is rarely cause for concern. In the Berkeley DB 3.2 release, the C++ API (if that API is configured to throw exceptions) and the Java API have been changed so that this failure does not throw an exception, but rather returns a non-zero error code of `DB_INCOMPLETE`.

The following C++ methods will return `DB_INCOMPLETE` rather than throw an exception: `Db::close`, `Db::sync`, `DbEnv::memp_sync`, `DbEnv::txn_checkpoint`, and `DbMpoolFile::memp_fsync`.

The following Java methods are now declared "public int" rather than "public void", and will return `Db.DB_INCOMPLETE` rather than throw an exception: `Db.close()`, `Db.sync()`, and `DbEnv.checkpoint()`.

It is likely that the only change required by any application will be those currently checking for a `DB_INCOMPLETE` return that has been encapsulated in an exception.

## DB\_ENV->set\_tx\_recover

The `info` parameter of the function passed to `DB_ENV->set_tx_recover` is no longer needed. If your application calls `DB_ENV->set_tx_recover`, find the callback function referred to by that call and remove the `info` parameter.

In addition, the called function no longer needs to handle Berkeley DB log records, Berkeley DB will handle them internally as well as call the application-specified function. Any handling of Berkeley DB log records in the application's callback function may be removed.

In addition, the callback function will no longer be called with the `DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL` flag specified unless the transaction enclosing the operation successfully committed.

## DB\_ENV->set\_mutexlocks

Previous Berkeley DB releases included the `db_env_set_mutexlocks` function, intended for debugging, that allows applications to always obtain requested mutual exclusion mutexes without regard for their availability. This function has been replaced with `dbenv_set_mutexlocks`, which provides the same functionality on a per-database environment basis. Applications using the old function should be updated to use the new one.

## Java and C++ object reuse

In previous releases of Berkeley DB, Java DbEnv and Db objects, and C++ DbEnv and Db objects could be reused after they were closed, by calling open on them again. This is no longer permitted, and these objects no longer allow any operations after a close. Applications reusing these objects should be modified to create new objects instead.

## Java java.io.FileNotFoundException

The Java DbEnv.remove, Db.remove and Db.rename methods now throw java.io.FileNotFoundException in the case where the named file does not exist. Applications should be modified to catch this exception where appropriate.

## db\_dump

In previous releases of Berkeley DB, the db\_dump utility dumped Recno access method database keys as numeric strings. For consistency, the db\_dump utility has been changed in the 3.2 release to dump record numbers as hex pairs when the data items are being dumped as hex pairs. (See the **-k** and **-p** options to the db\_dump utility for more information.) Any applications or scripts post-processing the output of the db\_dump utility for Recno databases under these conditions may require modification.

## Upgrade Requirements

Log file formats and the Queue Access Method database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 3.2 release. (The on-disk Queue format changed from version 2 to version 3.) Until the underlying databases are upgraded, the DB\_OLD\_VERSION error.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

---

# Chapter 21. Upgrading Berkeley DB 3.0 applications to Berkeley DB 3.1

## introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 3.0 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 3.1 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## DB\_ENV->open, DB\_ENV->remove

In the Berkeley DB 3.1 release, the **config** argument to the DB\_ENV->open() and DB\_ENV->remove() methods has been removed, replaced by additional methods on the DB\_ENV handle. If your application calls DB\_ENV->open() or DB\_ENV->remove() with a NULL **config** argument, find those functions and remove the config argument from the call. If your application has non-NULL **config** argument, the strings values in that argument are replaced with calls to DB\_ENV methods as follows:

Previous config string	Berkeley DB 3.1 version method
DB_DATA_DIR	DB_ENV->set_data_dir()
DB_LOG_DIR	DB_ENV->set_lg_dir()
DB_TMP_DIR	DB_ENV->set_tmp_dir()

## DB\_ENV->set\_tx\_recover

The redo parameter of the function passed to DB\_ENV->set\_tx\_recover used to be an integer set to any one of a number of #defined values. In the 3.1 release of Berkeley DB, the redo parameter has been replaced by the op parameter which is an enumerated type of type db\_recops.

If your application calls DB\_ENV->set\_tx\_recover, then find the function referred to by the call. Replace the flag values in that function as follows:

Previous flag	Berkeley DB 3.1 version flag
TXN_BACKWARD_ROLL	DB_TXN_BACKWARD_ROLL
TXN_FORWARD_ROLL	DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL
TXN_OPENFILES	DB_TXN_OPENFILES
TXN_REDO	DB_TXN_FORWARD_ROLL
TXN_UNDO	DB_TXN_ABORT

## DB\_ENV->set\_feedback, DB->set\_feedback

Starting with the 3.1 release of Berkeley DB, the DB\_ENV->set\_feedback() and DB->set\_feedback() methods may return an error value, that is, they are no longer declared as

returning no value, instead they return an int or throw an exception as appropriate when an error occurs.

If your application calls these functions, you may want to check for a possible error on return.

## DB\_ENV->set\_paniccall, DB->set\_paniccall

Starting with the 3.1 release of Berkeley DB, the DB\_ENV->set\_paniccall and DB->set\_paniccall methods may return an error value, that is, they are no longer declared as returning no value, instead they return an int or throw an exception as appropriate when an error occurs.

If your application calls these functions, you may want to check for a possible error on return.

## DB->put

For the Queue and Recno access methods, when the DB\_APPEND flag is specified to the DB->put() method, the allocated record number is returned to the application in the **key** DBT argument. In previous releases of Berkeley DB, this DBT structure did not follow the usual DBT conventions. For example, it was not possible to cause Berkeley DB to allocate space for the returned record number. Rather, it was always assumed that the **data** field of the **key** structure referred to memory that could be used as storage for a db\_recno\_t type.

As of the Berkeley DB 3.1.0 release, the **key** structure behaves as described in the DBT C++/Java class or C structure documentation.

Applications which are using the DB\_APPEND flag for Queue and Recno access method databases will require a change to upgrade to the Berkeley DB 3.1 releases. The simplest change is likely to be to add the DB\_DBT\_USERMEM flag to the **key** structure. For example, code that appears as follows:

```
DBT key;
db_recno_t recno;

memset(&key, 0, sizeof(DBT));
key.data = &recno;
key.size = sizeof(recno);
DB->put(DB, NULL, &key, &data, DB_APPEND);
printf("new record number is %lu\n", (u_long)recno);
```

would be changed to:

```
DBT key;
db_recno_t recno;

memset(&key, 0, sizeof(DBT));
key.data = &recno;
key.ulen = sizeof(recno);
key.flags = DB_DBT_USERMEM;
DB->put(DB, NULL, &key, &data, DB_APPEND);
printf("new record number is %lu\n", (u_long)recno);
```

Note that the **ulen** field is now set as well as the flag value. An alternative change would be:

```
DBT key;
db_recno_t recno;

memset(&key, 0, sizeof(DBT));
DB->put(DB, NULL, &key, &data, DB_APPEND);
recno = *(db_recno_t *)key->data;
printf("new record number is %lu\n", (u_long)recno);
```

## identical duplicate data items

In previous releases of Berkeley DB, it was not an error to store identical duplicate data items, or, for those that just like the way it sounds, duplicate duplicates. However, there were implementation bugs where storing duplicate duplicates could cause database corruption.

In this release, applications may store identical duplicate data items as long as the data items are unsorted. It is an error to attempt to store identical duplicate data items when duplicates are being stored in a sorted order. This restriction is expected to be lifted in a future release. See Duplicate data items for more information.

## DB->stat

For Btree database statistics, the DB->stat() method field **bt\_nrecs** has been removed, replaced by two fields: **bt\_nkeys** and **bt\_ndata**. The **bt\_nkeys** field returns a count of the unique keys in the database. The **bt\_ndata** field returns a count of the key/data pairs in the database. Neither exactly matches the previous value of the **bt\_nrecs** field, which returned a count of keys in the database, but, in the case of Btree databases, could overcount as it sometimes counted duplicate data items as unique keys. The application should be searched for any uses of the **bt\_nrecs** field and the field should be changed to be either **bt\_nkeys** or **bt\_ndata**, whichever is more appropriate.

For Hash database statistics, the DB->stat() method field **hash\_nrecs** has been removed, replaced by two fields: **hash\_nkeys** and **hash\_ndata**. The **hash\_nkeys** field returns a count of the unique keys in the database. The **hash\_ndata** field returns a count of the key/data pairs in the database. The new **hash\_nkeys** field exactly matches the previous value of the **hash\_nrecs** field. The application should be searched for any uses of the **hash\_nrecs** field, and the field should be changed to be **hash\_nkeys**.

For Queue database statistics, the DB->stat() method field **qs\_nrecs** has been removed, replaced by two fields: **qs\_nkeys** and **qs\_ndata**. The **qs\_nkeys** field returns a count of the unique keys in the database. The **qs\_ndata** field returns a count of the key/data pairs in the database. The new **qs\_nkeys** field exactly matches the previous value of the **qs\_nrecs** field. The application should be searched for any uses of the **qs\_nrecs** field, and the field should be changed to be **qs\_nkeys**.

## DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM

Using the DB\_SYSTEM\_MEM option on UNIX systems now requires the specification of a base system memory segment ID, using the DB\_ENV->set\_shm\_key() method. Any valid segment ID may be specified, for example, one returned by the UNIX ftok(3) function.

## log\_register

The arguments to the `log_register` and `log_unregister` interfaces have changed. Instead of returning (and passing in) a logging file ID, a reference to the DB structure being registered (or unregistered) is passed. The application should be searched for any occurrences of `log_register` and `log_unregister`. For each one, change the arguments to be a reference to the DB structure being registered or unregistered.

## memp\_register

An additional argument has been added to the `pgin` and `pgout` functions provided to the `memp_register` function. The application should be searched for any occurrences of `memp_register`. For each one, if `pgin` or `pgout` functions are specified, the `pgin` and `pgout` functions should be modified to take an initial argument of a `DB_ENV *`. This argument is intended to support better error reporting for applications, and may be entirely ignored by the `pgin` and `pgout` functions themselves.

## txn\_checkpoint

An additional argument has been added to the `txn_checkpoint` function.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of `txn_checkpoint`. For each one, an argument of 0 should be appended to the current arguments.

## environment configuration

A set of `DB_ENV` configuration methods which were not environment specific, but which instead affected the entire application space, have been removed from the `DB_ENV` object and replaced by static functions. The following table lists the `DB_ENV` methods previously available to applications and the static functions that should now be used instead.

DB_ENV method	Berkeley DB 3.1 function
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_close</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_close</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_dirfree</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_dirfree</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_dirlist</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_dirlist</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_exists</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_exists</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_free</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_free</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_fsync</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_fsync</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_ioinfo</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_ioinfo</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_malloc</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_malloc</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_map</code>	<code>dbenv_set_func_map</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_open</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_open</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_read</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_read</code>
<code>DB_ENV-&gt;set_func_realloc</code>	<code>db_env_set_func_realloc</code>



DB_ENV method	Berkeley DB 3.1 function
DB_ENV->set_func_rename	db_env_set_func_rename
DB_ENV->set_func_seek	db_env_set_func_seek
DB_ENV->set_func_sleep	db_env_set_func_sleep
DB_ENV->set_func_unlink	db_env_set_func_unlink
DB_ENV->set_func_unmap	dbenv_set_func_unmap
DB_ENV->set_func_write	db_env_set_func_write
DB_ENV->set_func_yield	db_env_set_func_yield
DB_ENV->set_pageyield	dbenv_set_pageyield
DB_ENV->set_region_init	dbenv_set_region_init
DB_ENV->set_mutexlocks	dbenv_set_mutexlocks
DB_ENV->set_tas_spins	dbenv_set_tas_spins

## Tcl API

The Berkeley DB Tcl API has been modified so that the **-mpool** option to the **berkdb env** command is now the default behavior. The Tcl API has also been modified so that the **-txn** option to the **berkdb env** command implies the **-lock** and **-log** options. Tcl scripts should be updated to remove the **-mpool**, **-lock** and **-log** options.

The Berkeley DB Tcl API has been modified to follow the Tcl standard rules for integer conversion, for example, if the first two characters of a record number are "0x", the record number is expected to be in hexadecimal form.

## DB\_TMP\_DIR

This change only affects Win/32 applications that create in-memory databases.

On Win/32 platforms an additional test has been added when searching for the appropriate directory in which to create the temporary files that are used to back in-memory databases. Berkeley DB now uses any return value from the GetTempPath interface as the temporary file directory name before resorting to the static list of compiled-in pathnames.

If the system registry does not return the same directory as Berkeley DB has been using previously, this change could cause temporary backing files to move to a new directory when applications are upgraded to the 3.1 release. In extreme cases, this could create (or fix) security problems if the file protection modes for the system registry directory are different from those on the directory previously used by Berkeley DB.

## log file pre-allocation

This change only affects Win/32 applications.

On Win/32 platforms Berkeley DB no longer pre-allocates log files. The problem was a noticeable performance spike as each log file was created. To turn this feature back on,

search for the flag `DB_OSO_LOG` in the source file `log/log_put.c` and make the change described there, or contact us for assistance.

## Upgrade Requirements

Log file formats and the Btree, Queue, Recno and Hash Access Method database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 3.1 release. (The on-disk Btree/Recno format changed from version 7 to version 8. The on-disk Hash format changed from version 6 to version 7. The on-disk Queue format changed from version 1 to version 2.) Until the underlying databases are upgraded, the `DB->open()` method will return a `DB_OLD_VERSION` error.

An additional flag, `DB_DUPSORT`, has been added to the `DB->upgrade()` method for this upgrade. Please review the `DB->upgrade()` documentation for further information.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

---

# Chapter 22. Upgrading Berkeley DB 2.X applications to Berkeley DB 3.0

## introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 2.X release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 3.0 release interfaces. This information does not describe how to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 release applications.

## environment open/close/unlink

The hardest part of upgrading your application from a 2.X code base to the 3.0 release is translating the Berkeley DB environment open, close and remove calls.

There were two logical changes in this part of the Berkeley DB interface. First, in Berkeley DB 3.0, there are no longer separate structures that represent each subsystem (for example, DB\_LOCKTAB or DB\_TXNMGR) and an overall DB\_ENV environment structure. Instead there is only the DB\_ENV references should be passed around by your application instead of passing around DB\_LOCKTAB or DB\_TXNMGR references. This is likely to be a simple change for most applications as few applications use the lock\_XXX, log\_XXX, memp\_XXX or txn\_XXX interfaces to create Berkeley DB environments.

The second change is that there are no longer separate open, close, and unlink interfaces to the Berkeley DB subsystems. For example, in previous releases, it was possible to open a lock subsystem either using db\_appinit or using the lock\_open call. In the 3.0 release the XXX\_open interfaces to the subsystems have been removed, and subsystems must now be opened using the 3.0 replacement for the db\_appinit call.

To upgrade your application, first find each place your application opens, closes and/or removes a Berkeley DB environment. This will be code of the form:

```
db_appinit, db_appexit
lock_open, lock_close, lock_unlink
log_open, log_close, log_unlink
memp_open, memp_close, memp_unlink
txn_open, txn_close, txn_unlink
```

Each of these groups of calls should be replaced with calls to db\_env\_create(), DB\_ENV->open(), DB\_ENV->close(), and DB\_ENV->remove().

The db\_env\_create() call and the call to the DB\_ENV->open() method replace the db\_appinit, lock\_open, log\_open, memp\_open and txn\_open calls. The DB\_ENV->close() method replaces the db\_appexit, lock\_close, log\_close, memp\_close and txn\_close calls. The DB\_ENV->remove() call replaces the lock\_unlink, log\_unlink, memp\_unlink and txn\_unlink calls.

Here's an example creating a Berkeley DB environment using the 2.X interface:

```
/*
 * db_init --
 * Initialize the environment.
```

```
*/
DB_ENV *
db_init(home)
char *home;
{
    DB_ENV *dbenv;

    if ((dbenv = (DB_ENV *)calloc(sizeof(DB_ENV), 1)) == NULL)
        return (errno);

    if ((errno = db_appinit(home, NULL, dbenv,
        DB_INIT_LOCK | DB_INIT_LOG | DB_INIT_MPOOL | DB_INIT_TXN |
        DB_USE_ENVIRON)) == 0)
        return (dbenv);

    free(dbenv);
    return (NULL);
}
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
/*
 * db_init --
 * Initialize the environment.
 */
int
db_init(home, dbenvp)
char *home;
DB_ENV **dbenvp;
{
    int ret;
    DB_ENV *dbenv;

    if ((ret = db_env_create(&dbenv, 0)) != 0)
        return (ret);

    if ((ret = dbenv->open(dbenv, home, NULL,
        DB_INIT_LOCK | DB_INIT_LOG | DB_INIT_MPOOL | DB_INIT_TXN |
        DB_USE_ENVIRON, 0)) == 0) {
        *dbenvp = dbenv;
        return (0);
    }

    (void)dbenv->close(dbenv, 0);
    return (ret);
}
```

As you can see, the arguments to `db_appinit` and to `DB_ENV->open()` are largely the same. There is some minor re-organization: the mapping is that arguments #1, 2, 3, and 4 to `db_appinit` become arguments #2, 3, 1 and 4 to `DB_ENV->open()`. There is one additional

argument to `DB_ENV->open()`, argument #5. For backward compatibility with the 2.X Berkeley DB releases, simply set that argument to 0.

It is only slightly more complex to translate calls to `XXX_open` to the `DB_ENV->open()` method. Here's an example of creating a lock region using the 2.X interface:

```
lock_open(dir, DB_CREATE, 0664, dbenv, &regionp);
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
if ((ret = db_env_create(&dbenv, 0)) != 0)
    return (ret);

if ((ret = dbenv->open(dbenv,
    dir, NULL, DB_CREATE | DB_INIT_LOCK, 0664)) == 0) {
    *dbenvp = dbenv;
    return (0);
}
```

Note that in this example, you no longer need the `DB_LOCKTAB` structure reference that was required in Berkeley DB 2.X releases.

The final issue with upgrading the `db_appinit` call is the `DB_MPOOL_PRIVATE` option previously provided for the `db_appinit` call. If your application is using this flag, it should almost certainly use the new `DB_PRIVATE` flag to the `DB_ENV->open()` method. Regardless, you should carefully consider this change before converting to use the `DB_PRIVATE` flag.

Translating `db_appexit` or `XXX_close` calls to `DB_ENV->close()` is equally simple. Instead of taking a reference to a per-subsystem structure such as `DB_LOCKTAB` or `DB_TXNMGR`, all calls take a reference to a `DB_ENV` structure. The calling sequence is otherwise unchanged. Note that as the application no longer allocates the memory for the `DB_ENV` structure, application code to discard it after the call to `db_appexit()` is no longer needed.

Translating `XXX_unlink` calls to `DB_ENV->remove()` is slightly more complex. As with `DB_ENV->close()`, the call takes a reference to a `DB_ENV` structure instead of a per-subsystem structure. The calling sequence is slightly different, however. Here is an example of removing a lock region using the 2.X interface:

```
DB_ENV *dbenv;

ret = lock_unlink(dir, 1, dbenv);
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code fragment would be written as:

```
DB_ENV *dbenv;

ret = dbenv->remove(dbenv, dir, NULL, DB_FORCE);
```

The additional argument to the `DB_ENV->remove()` function is a configuration argument similar to that previously taken by `db_appinit` and now taken by the `DB_ENV->open()` method. For backward compatibility this new argument should simply be set to `NULL`. The force argument to `XXX_unlink` is now a flag value that is set by bitwise inclusively **OR**'ing it the `DB_ENV->remove()` flag argument.

## function arguments

In Berkeley DB 3.0, there are no longer separate structures that represent each subsystem (for example, `DB_LOCKTAB` or `DB_TXNMGR`), and an overall `DB_ENV` environment structure. Instead there is only the `DB_ENV` references should be passed around by your application instead of passing around `DB_LOCKTAB` or `DB_TXNMGR` references.

Each of the following functions:

```
lock_detect
lock_get
lock_id
lock_put
lock_stat
lock_vec
```

should have its first argument, a reference to the `DB_LOCKTAB` structure, replaced with a reference to the enclosing `DB_ENV` structure. For example, the following line of code from a Berkeley DB 2.X application:

```
DB_LOCKTAB *lt;
DB_LOCK lock;

ret = lock_put(lt, lock);
```

should now be written as follows:

```
DB_ENV *dbenv;
DB_LOCK *lock;

ret = lock_put(dbenv, lock);
```

Similarly, all of the functions:

```
log_archive
log_compare
log_file
log_flush
log_get
log_put
log_register
log_stat
log_unregister
```

should have their `DB_LOG` argument replaced with a reference to a `DB_ENV` structure, and the functions:

```
memp_fopen
memp_register
memp_stat
memp_sync
memp_trickle
```

should have their DB\_MPOOL argument replaced with a reference to a DB\_ENV structure.

You should remove all references to DB\_LOCKTAB, DB\_LOG, DB\_MPOOL, and DB\_TXNMGR structures from your application, they are no longer useful in any way. In fact, a simple way to identify all of the places that need to be upgraded is to remove all such structures and variables they declare, and then compile. You will see a warning message from your compiler in each case that needs to be upgraded.

## DB\_ENV structure

The DB\_ENV structure is now opaque for applications in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release. Accesses to any fields within that structure by the application should be replaced with method calls. The following example illustrates this using the historic errpfx structure field. In the Berkeley DB 2.X releases, applications set error prefixes using code similar to the following:

```
DB_ENV *dbenv;

dbenv->errpfx = "my prefix";
```

in the Berkeley DB 3.X releases, this should be done using the DB\_ENV->set\_errpfx() method, as follows:

```
DB_ENV *dbenv;

dbenv->set_errpfx(dbenv, "my prefix");
```

The following table lists the DB\_ENV fields previously used by applications and the methods that should now be used to set them.

DB_ENV field	Berkeley DB 3.X method
db_errcall	DB_ENV->set_errcall()
db_errfile	DB_ENV->set_errfile()
db_errpfx	DB_ENV->set_errpfx()
db_lorder	This field was removed from the DB_ENV structure in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release as no application should have ever used it. Any code using it should be evaluated for potential bugs.
db_paniccall	DB_ENV->set_paniccall
db_verbose	DB_ENV->set_verbose()  Note: the db_verbose field was a simple boolean toggle, the DB_ENV->set_verbose() method takes arguments that specify exactly which verbose messages are desired.
lg_max	DB_ENV->set_lg_max()
lk_conflicts	DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts()

DB_ENV field	Berkeley DB 3.X method
lk_detect	DB_ENV->set_lk_detect()
lk_max	dbenv->set_lk_max
lk_modes	DB_ENV->set_lk_conflicts()
mp_mmapsize	DB_ENV->set_mp_mmapsize()
mp_size	DB_ENV->set_cachesize()  Note: the DB_ENV->set_cachesize() function takes additional arguments. Setting both the second argument (the number of GB in the pool) and the last argument (the number of memory pools to create) to 0 will result in behavior that is backward-compatible with previous Berkeley DB releases.
tx_info	This field was used by applications as an argument to the transaction subsystem functions. As those functions take references to a DB_ENV structure as arguments in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, it should no longer be used by any application.
tx_max	DB_ENV->set_tx_max()
tx_recover	dbenv->set_tx_recover

## database open/close

Database opens were changed in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release in a similar way to environment opens.

To upgrade your application, first find each place your application opens a database, that is, calls the `db_open` function. Each of these calls should be replaced with calls to `db_create()` and `DB->open()`.

Here's an example creating a Berkeley DB database using the 2.X interface:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;

if ((ret = db_open(DATABASE,
    DB_BTREE, DB_CREATE, 0664, dbenv, NULL, &dbp)) != 0)
    return (ret);
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
DB *dbp;
DB_ENV *dbenv;
int ret;
```



```
if ((ret = db_create(&dbp, dbenv, 0)) != 0)
    return (ret);

if ((ret = dbp->open(dbp,
    DATABASE, NULL, DB_BTREE, DB_CREATE, 0664)) != 0) {
    (void)dbp->close(dbp, 0);
    return (ret);
}
```

As you can see, the arguments to `db_open` and to `DB->open()` are largely the same. There is some re-organization, and note that the enclosing `DB_ENV` structure is specified when the DB object is created using the `db_create()` function. There is one additional argument to `DB->open()`, argument #3. For backward compatibility with the 2.X Berkeley DB releases, simply set that argument to `NULL`.

There are two additional issues with the `db_open` call.

First, it was possible in the 2.X releases for an application to provide an environment that did not contain a shared memory buffer pool as the database environment, and Berkeley DB would create a private one automatically. This functionality is no longer available, applications must specify the `DB_INIT_MPOOL` flag if databases are going to be opened in the environment.

The final issue with upgrading the `db_open` call is that the `DB_INFO` structure is no longer used, having been replaced by individual methods on the DB handle. That change is discussed in detail later in this chapter.

## db\_xa\_open

The following change applies only to applications using Berkeley DB as an XA Resource Manager. If your application is not using Berkeley DB in this way, you can ignore this change.

The `db_xa_open` function has been replaced with the `DB_XA_CREATE` flag to the `db_create()` function. All calls to `db_xa_open` should be replaced with calls to `db_create()` with the `DB_XA_CREATE` flag set, followed by a call to the `DB->open()` function.

A similar change has been made for the C++ API, where the `DB_XA_CREATE` flag should be specified to the `Db` constructor. All calls to the `Db::xa_open` method should be replaced with the `DB_XA_CREATE` flag to the `Db` constructor, followed by a call to the `DB::open` method.

## DB structure

The DB structure is now opaque for applications in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release. Accesses to any fields within that structure by the application should be replaced with method calls. The following example illustrates this using the historic type structure field. In the Berkeley DB 2.X releases, applications could find the type of an underlying database using code similar to the following:

```
DB *db;
DB_TYPE type;
```

```
type = db->type;
```

in the Berkeley DB 3.X releases, this should be done using the `DB->get_type()` method, as follows:

```
DB *db;
DB_TYPE type;

type = db->get_type(db);
```

The following table lists the DB fields previously used by applications and the methods that should now be used to get or set them.

DB field	Berkeley DB 3.X method
byteswapped	<code>DB-&gt;get_byteswapped()</code>
db_errcall	<code>DB-&gt;set_errcall()</code>
db_errfile	<code>DB-&gt;set_errfile()</code>
db_errpfx	<code>DB-&gt;set_errpfx()</code>
db_paniccall	<code>DB-&gt;set_paniccall</code>
type	<code>DB-&gt;get_type()</code>

## DBINFO structure

The `DB_INFO` structure has been removed from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release. Accesses to any fields within that structure by the application should be replaced with method calls on the DB handle. The following example illustrates this using the historic `db_cachesize` structure field. In the Berkeley DB 2.X releases, applications could set the size of an underlying database cache using code similar to the following:

```
DB_INFO dbinfo;

memset(dbinfo, 0, sizeof(dbinfo));
dbinfo.db_cachesize = 1024 * 1024;
```

in the Berkeley DB 3.X releases, this should be done using the `DB->set_cachesize()` method, as follows:

```
DB *db;
int ret;

ret = db->set_cachesize(db, 0, 1024 * 1024, 0);
```

The `DB_INFO` structure is no longer used in any way by the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, and should be removed from the application.

The following table lists the `DB_INFO` fields previously used by applications and the methods that should now be used to set them. Because these calls provide configuration for the database open, they must precede the call to `DB->open()`. Calling them after the call to `DB->open()` will return an error.

DB_INFO field	Berkeley DB 3.X method
bt_compare	DB->set_bt_compare()
bt_minkey	DB->set_bt_minkey()
bt_prefix	DB->set_bt_prefix()
db_cachesize	DB->set_cachesize()  Note: the DB->set_cachesize() function takes additional arguments. Setting both the second argument (the number of GB in the pool) and the last argument (the number of memory pools to create) to 0 will result in behavior that is backward-compatible with previous Berkeley DB releases.
db_lorder	DB->set_lorder()
db_malloc	DB->set_malloc
db_pagesize	DB->set_pagesize()
dup_compare	DB->set_dup_compare()
flags	DB->set_flags()  Note: the DB_DELIMITER, DB_FIXEDLEN and DB_PAD flags no longer need to be set as there are specific methods off the DB handle that set the file delimiter, the length of fixed-length records and the fixed-length record pad character. They should simply be discarded from the application.
h_ffactor	DB->set_h_ffactor()
h_hash	DB->set_h_hash()
h_nelem	DB->set_h_nelem()
re_delim	DB->set_re_delim()
re_len	DB->set_re_len()
re_pad	DB->set_re_pad()
re_source	DB->set_re_source()

## DB->join

Historically, the last two arguments to the DB->join() method were a flags value followed by a reference to a memory location to store the returned cursor object. In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, the order of those two arguments has been swapped for consistency with other Berkeley DB interfaces.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of DB->join(). For each of these, the order of the last two arguments should be swapped.

## DB->stat

The `bt_flags` field returned from the `DB->stat()` method for Btree and Recno databases has been removed, and this information is no longer available.

## DB->sync and DB->close

In previous Berkeley DB releases, the `DB->close()` and `DB->sync()` methods discarded any return of `DB_INCOMPLETE` from the underlying buffer pool interfaces, and returned success to its caller. (The `DB_INCOMPLETE` error will be returned if the buffer pool functions are unable to flush all of the database's dirty blocks from the pool. This often happens if another thread is reading or writing the database's pages in the pool.)

In the 3.X release, `DB->sync()` and `DB->close()` will return `DB_INCOMPLETE` to the application. The best solution is to not call `DB->sync()` with the `DB_NOSYNC` flag to the `DB->close()` method when multiple threads are expected to be accessing the database. Alternatively, the caller can ignore any error return of `DB_INCOMPLETE`.

## lock\_put

An argument change has been made in the `lock_put` function.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of `lock_put`. For each one, instead of passing a `DB_LOCK` variable as the last argument to the function, the address of the `DB_LOCK` variable should be passed.

## lock\_detect

An additional argument has been added to the `lock_detect` function.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of `lock_detect`. For each one, a `NULL` argument should be appended to the current arguments.

## lock\_stat

The `st_magic`, `st_version`, `st_numobjs` and `st_refcnt` fields returned from the `lock_stat` function have been removed, and this information is no longer available.

## log\_register

An argument has been removed from the `log_register` function. The application should be searched for any occurrences of `log_register`. In each of these, the `DBTYPE` argument (it is the fourth argument) should be removed.

## log\_stat

The `st_refcnt` field returned from the `log_stat` function has been removed, and this information is no longer available.

## memp\_stat

The `st_refcnt` field returned from the `memp_stat` function has been removed, and this information is no longer available.

The `st_cachesize` field returned from the `memp_stat` function has been replaced with two new fields, `st_gbytes` and `st_bytes`.

## txn\_begin

An additional argument has been added to the `txn_begin` function.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of `txn_begin`. For each one, an argument of 0 should be appended to the current arguments.

## txn\_commit

An additional argument has been added to the `txn_commit` function.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of `txn_commit`. For each one, an argument of 0 should be appended to the current arguments.

## txn\_stat

The `st_refcnt` field returned from the `txn_stat` function has been removed, and this information is no longer available.

## DB\_RMW

The following change applies only to applications using the Berkeley DB Concurrent Data Store product. If your application is not using that product, you can ignore this change.

Historically, the `DB->cursor()` method took the `DB_RMW` flag to indicate that the created cursor would be used for write operations on the database. This flag has been renamed to the `DB_WRITECURSOR` flag.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of `DB_RMW`. For each of these, any that are arguments to the `DB->cursor()` function should be changed to pass in the `DB_WRITECURSOR` flag instead.

## DB\_LOCK\_NOTHELD

Historically, the Berkeley DB `lock_put` and `lock_vec` interfaces could return the `DB_LOCK_NOTHELD` error to indicate that a lock could not be released as it was held by another locker. This error can no longer be returned under any circumstances. The application should be searched for any occurrences of `DB_LOCK_NOTHELD`. For each of these, the test and any error processing should be removed.

## EAGAIN

Historically, the Berkeley DB interfaces have returned the POSIX error value EAGAIN to indicate a deadlock. This has been removed from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release in order to make it possible for applications to distinguish between EAGAIN errors returned by the system and returns from Berkeley DB indicating deadlock.

The application should be searched for any occurrences of EAGAIN. For each of these, any that are checking for a deadlock return from Berkeley DB should be changed to check for the DB\_LOCK\_DEADLOCK return value.

If, for any reason, this is a difficult change for the application to make, the `include/db.src` distribution file should be modified to translate all returns of DB\_LOCK\_DEADLOCK to EAGAIN. Search for the string EAGAIN in that file, there is a comment that describes how to make the change.

## EACCES

There was an error in previous releases of the Berkeley DB documentation that said that the `lock_put` and `lock_vec` interfaces could return EACCES as an error to indicate that a lock could not be released because it was held by another locker. The application should be searched for any occurrences of EACCES. For each of these, any that are checking for an error return from `lock_put` or `lock_vec` should have the test and any error handling removed.

## db\_jump\_set

The `db_jump_set` interface has been removed from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, replaced by method calls on the DB\_ENV handle.

The following table lists the `db_jump_set` arguments previously used by applications and the methods that should now be used instead.

db_jump_set argument	Berkeley DB 3.X method
DB_FUNC_CLOSE	db_env_set_func_close
DB_FUNC_DIRFREE	db_env_set_func_dirfree
DB_FUNC_DIRLIST	db_env_set_func_dirlist
DB_FUNC_EXISTS	db_env_set_func_exists
DB_FUNC_FREE	db_env_set_func_free
DB_FUNC_FSYNC	db_env_set_func_fsync
DB_FUNC_IOINFO	db_env_set_func_ioinfo
DB_FUNC_MALLOC	db_env_set_func_malloc
DB_FUNC_MAP	dbenv_set_func_map
DB_FUNC_OPEN	db_env_set_func_open
DB_FUNC_READ	db_env_set_func_read

db_jump_set argument	Berkeley DB 3.X method
DB_FUNC_REALLOC	db_env_set_func_realloc
DB_FUNC_RUNLINK	The DB_FUNC_RUNLINK functionality has been removed from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, and should be removed from the application.
DB_FUNC_SEEK	db_env_set_func_seek
DB_FUNC_SLEEP	db_env_set_func_sleep
DB_FUNC_UNLINK	db_env_set_func_unlink
DB_FUNC_UNMAP	dbenv_set_func_unmap
DB_FUNC_WRITE	db_env_set_func_write
DB_FUNC_YIELD	db_env_set_func_yield

## db\_value\_set

The db\_value\_set function has been removed from the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, replaced by method calls on the DB\_ENV handle.

The following table lists the db\_value\_set arguments previously used by applications and the function that should now be used instead.

db_value_set argument	Berkeley DB 3.X method
DB_MUTEX_LOCKS	dbenv_set_mutexlocks
DB_REGION_ANON	The DB_REGION_ANON functionality has been replaced by the DB_SYSTEM_MEM and DB_PRIVATE flags to the DB_ENV->open() function. A direct translation is not available, please review the DB_ENV->open() manual page for more information.
DB_REGION_INIT	dbenv_set_region_init
DB_REGION_NAME	The DB_REGION_NAME functionality has been replaced by the DB_SYSTEM_MEM and DB_PRIVATE flags to the DB_ENV->open() function. A direct translation is not available, please review the DB_ENV->open() manual page for more information.
DB_TSL_SPINS	dbenv_set_tas_spins

## DbEnv class for C++ and Java

The DbEnv::appinit() method and two constructors for the DbEnv class are gone. There is now a single way to create and initialize the environment. The way to create an environment is to use the new DbEnv constructor with one argument. After this call, the DbEnv can be configured with various set\_XXX methods. Finally, a call to DbEnv::open is made to initialize the environment.

Here's a C++ example creating a Berkeley DB environment using the 2.X interface

```
int dberr;
DbEnv *dbenv = new DbEnv();

dbenv->set_error_stream(&cerr);
dbenv->set_errpfx("myprog");

if ((dberr = dbenv->appinit("/database/home",
    NULL, DB_CREATE | DB_INIT_LOCK | DB_INIT_MPOOL)) != 0) {
    cerr << "failure: " << strerror(dberr);
    exit (1);
}
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
int dberr;
DbEnv *dbenv = new DbEnv(0);

dbenv->set_error_stream(&cerr);
dbenv->set_errpfx("myprog");

if ((dberr = dbenv->open("/database/home",
    NULL, DB_CREATE | DB_INIT_LOCK | DB_INIT_MPOOL, 0)) != 0) {
    cerr << "failure: " << dbenv->strerror(dberr);
    exit (1);
}
```

Here's a Java example creating a Berkeley DB environment using the 2.X interface:

```
int dberr;
DbEnv dbenv = new DbEnv();

dbenv.set_error_stream(System.err);
dbenv.set_errpfx("myprog");

dbenv.appinit("/database/home",
    null, Db.DB_CREATE | Db.DB_INIT_LOCK | Db.DB_INIT_MPOOL);
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
int dberr;
DbEnv dbenv = new DbEnv(0);

dbenv.set_error_stream(System.err);
dbenv.set_errpfx("myprog");

dbenv.open("/database/home",
    null, Db.DB_CREATE | Db.DB_INIT_LOCK | Db.DB_INIT_MPOOL, 0);
```

In the Berkeley DB 2.X release, DbEnv had accessors to obtain "managers" of type DbTxnMgr, DbMpool, DbLog, DbTxnMgr. If you used any of these managers, all their methods are now found directly in the DbEnv class.



## Db class for C++ and Java

The static `Db::open` method and the `DbInfo` class have been removed in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release. The way to open a database file is to use the new `Db` constructor with two arguments, followed by `set_XXX` methods to configure the `Db` object, and finally a call to the new (nonstatic) `Db::open()`. In comparing the Berkeley DB 3.0 release `open` method with the 2.X static `open` method, the second argument is new. It is a database name, which can be null. The `DbEnv` argument has been removed, as the environment is now specified in the constructor. The `open` method no longer returns a `Db`, since it operates on one.

Here's a C++ example opening a Berkeley DB database using the 2.X interface:

```
// Note: by default, errors are thrown as exceptions
Db *table;
Db::open("lookup.db", DB_BTREE, DB_CREATE, 0644, dbenv, 0, &table);
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
// Note: by default, errors are thrown as exceptions
Db *table = new Db(dbenv, 0);
table->open("lookup.db", NULL, DB_BTREE, DB_CREATE, 0644);
```

Here's a Java example opening a Berkeley DB database using the 2.X interface:

```
// Note: errors are thrown as exceptions
Db table = Db.open("lookup.db", Db.DB_BTREE, Db.DB_CREATE, 0644, dbenv, 0);
```

In the Berkeley DB 3.0 release, this code would be written as:

```
// Note: errors are thrown as exceptions
Db table = new Db(dbenv, 0);
table.open("lookup.db", null, Db.DB_BTREE, Db.DB_CREATE, 0644);
```

Note that if the `dbenv` argument is null, the database will not exist within an environment.

## additional C++ changes

The `Db::set_error_model` method is gone. The way to change the C++ API to return errors rather than throw exceptions is via a flag on the `DbEnv` or `Db` constructor. For example:

```
int dberr;
DbEnv *dbenv = new DbEnv(DB_CXX_NO_EXCEPTIONS);
```

creates an environment that will never throw exceptions, and method returns should be checked instead.

There are a number of smaller changes to the API that bring the C, C++ and Java APIs much closer in terms of functionality and usage. Please refer to the pages for upgrading C applications for further details.

## additional Java changes

There are several additional types of exceptions thrown in the Berkeley DB 3.0 Java API.

DbMemoryException and DbDeadlockException can be caught independently of DbException if you want to do special handling for these kinds of errors. Since they are subclassed from DbException, a try block that catches DbException will catch these also, so code is not required to change. The catch clause for these new exceptions should appear before the catch clause for DbException.

You will need to add a catch clause for java.io.FileNotFoundException, since that can be thrown by Db.open and DbEnv.open.

There are a number of smaller changes to the API that bring the C, C++ and Java APIs much closer in terms of functionality and usage. Please refer to the pages for upgrading C applications for further details.

## Upgrade Requirements

Log file formats and the Btree, Recno and Hash Access Method database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 3.0 release. (The on-disk Btree/Recno format changed from version 6 to version 7. The on-disk Hash format changed from version 5 to version 6.) Until the underlying databases are upgraded, the DB->open() method will return a DB\_OLD\_VERSION error.

For further information on upgrading Berkeley DB installations, see [Upgrading Berkeley DB installations \(page 66\)](#).

---

# Chapter 23. Upgrading Berkeley DB 1.85 or 1.86 applications to Berkeley DB 2.0

## Introduction

The following pages describe how to upgrade applications coded against the Berkeley DB 1.85 and 1.86 release interfaces to the Berkeley DB 2.0 release interfaces. They do not describe how to upgrade to the current Berkeley DB release interfaces.

It is not difficult to upgrade Berkeley DB 1.85 applications to use the Berkeley DB version 2 library. The Berkeley DB version 2 library has a Berkeley DB 1.85 compatibility API, which you can use by either recompiling your application's source code or by relinking its object files against the version 2 library. The underlying databases must be converted, however, as the Berkeley DB version 2 library has a different underlying database format.

## System Integration

1. It is possible to maintain both the Berkeley DB 1.85 and Berkeley DB version 2 libraries on your system. However, the `db.h` include file that was distributed with Berkeley DB 1.85 is not compatible with the `db.h` file distributed with Berkeley DB version 2, so you will have to install them in different locations. In addition, both the Berkeley DB 1.85 and Berkeley DB version 2 libraries are named `libdb.a`.

As the Berkeley DB 1.85 library did not have an installation target in the Makefile, there's no way to know exactly where it was installed on the system. In addition, many vendors included it in the C library instead of as a separate library, and so it may actually be part of `libc` and the `db.h` include file may be installed in `/usr/include`.

For these reasons, the simplest way to maintain both libraries is to install Berkeley DB version 2 in a completely separate area of your system. The Berkeley DB version 2 installation process allows you to install into a standalone directory hierarchy on your system. See the [Building for UNIX/POSIX \(page 32\)](#) documentation for more information and instructions on how to install the Berkeley DB version 2 library, include files and documentation into specific locations.

2. Alternatively, you can replace Berkeley DB 1.85 on your system with Berkeley DB version 2. In this case, you'll probably want to install Berkeley DB version 2 in the normal place on your system, wherever that may be, and delete the Berkeley DB 1.85 include files, manual pages and libraries.

To replace 1.85 with version 2, you must either convert your 1.85 applications to use the version 2 API or build the Berkeley DB version 2 library to include Berkeley DB 1.85 interface compatibility code. Whether converting your applications to use the version 2 interface or using the version 1.85 compatibility API, you will need to recompile or relink your 1.85 applications, and you must convert any persistent application databases to the Berkeley DB version 2 database formats.

If you want to recompile your Berkeley DB 1.85 applications, you will have to change them to include the file `db_185.h` instead of `db.h`. (The `db_185.h` file is automatically

installed during the Berkeley DB version 2 installation process.) You can then recompile the applications, linking them against the Berkeley DB version 2 library.

For more information on compiling the Berkeley DB 1.85 compatibility code into the Berkeley DB version 2 library, see [Building for UNIX/POSIX \(page 32\)](#).

For more information on converting databases from the Berkeley DB 1.85 formats to the Berkeley DB version 2 formats, see the `db_dump185` utility and the `db_load` utility documentation.

3. Finally, although we certainly do not recommend it, it is possible to load both Berkeley DB 1.85 and Berkeley DB version 2 into the same library. Similarly, it is possible to use both Berkeley DB 1.85 and Berkeley DB version 2 within a single application, although it is not possible to use them from within the same file.

The name space in Berkeley DB version 2 has been changed from that of previous Berkeley DB versions, notably version 1.85, for portability and consistency reasons. The only name collisions in the two libraries are the names used by the historic `dbm` and `hsearch` interfaces, and the Berkeley DB 1.85 compatibility interfaces in the Berkeley DB version 2 library.

If you are loading both Berkeley DB 1.85 and Berkeley DB version 2 into a single library, remove the historic interfaces from one of the two library builds, and configure the Berkeley DB version 2 build to not include the Berkeley DB 1.85 compatibility API, otherwise you could have collisions and undefined behavior. This can be done by editing the library Makefiles and reconfiguring and rebuilding the Berkeley DB version 2 library. Obviously, if you use the historic interfaces, you will get the version in the library from which you did not remove them. Similarly, you will not be able to access Berkeley DB version 2 files using the Berkeley DB 1.85 compatibility interface, since you have removed that from the library as well.

## Converting Applications

Mapping the Berkeley DB 1.85 functionality into Berkeley DB version 2 is almost always simple. The manual page `DB->open()` replaces the Berkeley DB 1.85 manual pages `dbopen(3)`, `btree(3)`, `hash(3)` and `recno(3)`. You should be able to convert each 1.85 function call into a Berkeley DB version 2 function call using just the `DB->open()` documentation.

Some guidelines and things to watch out for:

1. Most access method functions have exactly the same semantics as in Berkeley DB 1.85, although the arguments to the functions have changed in some cases. To get your code to compile, the most common change is to add the transaction ID as an argument (`NULL`, since Berkeley DB 1.85 did not support transactions.)
2. You must always initialize `DBT` structures to zero before using them with any Berkeley DB version 2 function. (They do not normally have to be reinitialized each time, only when they are first allocated. Do this by declaring the `DBT` structure external or static, or by calling the C library routine `bzero(3)` or `memset(3)`.)
3. The error returns are completely different in the two versions. In Berkeley DB 1.85, `< 0` meant an error, and `> 0` meant a minor Berkeley DB exception. In Berkeley DB 2.0, `> 0`

means an error (the Berkeley DB version 2 functions return `errno` on error) and `< 0` means a Berkeley DB exception. See Program returns to applications for more information.

4. The Berkeley DB 1.85 `DB->seq` function has been replaced by cursors in Berkeley DB version 2. The semantics are approximately the same, but cursors require the creation of an extra object (the DBC object), which is then used to access the database. Specifically, the partial key match and range search functionality of the `R_CURSOR` flag in `DB->seq` has been replaced by the `DB_SET_RANGE` flag in `DBC->get()`.
5. In version 2 of the Berkeley DB library, additions or deletions into `Recno` (fixed and variable-length record) databases no longer automatically logically renumber all records after the add/delete point, by default. The default behavior is that deleting records does not cause subsequent records to be renumbered, and it is an error to attempt to add new records between records already in the database. Applications wanting the historic `Recno` access method semantics should call the `DB->set_flags()` method with the `DB_RENUMBER` flag.
6. Opening a database in Berkeley DB version 2 is a much heavier-weight operation than it was in Berkeley DB 1.85. Therefore, if your historic applications were written to open a database, perform a single operation, and close the database, you may observe performance degradation. In most cases, this is due to the expense of creating the environment upon each open. While we encourage restructuring your application to avoid repeated opens and closes, you can probably recover most of the lost performance by simply using a persistent environment across invocations.

While simply converting Berkeley DB 1.85 function calls to Berkeley DB version 2 function calls will work, we recommend that you eventually reconsider your application's interface to the Berkeley DB database library in light of the additional functionality supplied by Berkeley DB version 2, as it is likely to result in enhanced application performance.

## Upgrade Requirements

You will need to upgrade your on-disk databases, as all access method database formats changed in the Berkeley DB 2.0 release. For information on converting databases from Berkeley DB 1.85 to Berkeley DB 2.0, see the `db_dump185` utility and `db_load` utility documentation. As database environments did not exist prior to the 2.0 release, there is no question of upgrading existing database environments.

---

## Chapter 24. Test Suite

### Running the test suite

Once you have started `tclsh` and have loaded the `test.tcl` source file (see [Running the test suite under UNIX \(page 45\)](#) and [Running the test suite under Windows \(page 24\)](#) for more information), you are ready to run the test suite. At the `tclsh` prompt, to run the standard test suite, enter the following:

```
% run_std
```

A more exhaustive version of the test suite runs all the tests several more times, testing encryption, replication, and different page sizes. After you have a clean run for `run_std`, you may choose to run this lengthier set of tests. At the `tclsh` prompt, enter:

```
% run_all
```

Running the standard tests can take from several hours to a few days to complete, depending on your hardware, and running all the tests will take at least twice as long. For this reason, the output from these commands are redirected to a file in the current directory named `ALL.OUT`. Periodically, a line will be written to the standard output, indicating what test is being run. When the test suite has finished, a final message will be written indicating the test suite has completed successfully or that it has failed. If the run failed, you should review the `ALL.OUT` file to determine which tests failed. Errors will appear in that file as output lines, beginning with the string "FAIL".

Tests are run in the directory `TESTDIR`, by default. However, the test files are often large, and you should use a filesystem with at least several hundred megabytes of free space. To use a different directory for the test directory, edit the file `include.tcl` in your build directory, and change the following line to a more appropriate value for your system:

```
set testdir ./TESTDIR
```

For example, you might change it to the following:

```
set testdir /var/tmp/db.test
```

Alternatively, you can create a symbolic link named `TESTDIR` in your build directory to an appropriate location for running the tests. Regardless of where you run the tests, the `TESTDIR` directory should be on a local filesystem. Using a remote filesystem (for example, an NFS mounted filesystem) will almost certainly cause spurious test failures.

### Running SQL Test Suite on Unix

Once the test suite is built (see [Building SQL Test Suite on Unix \(page 46\)](#) for more information), run the entire test suite by executing the following command in the `../build_unix/sql` directory:

```
sh ../../sql/adapters/bdb-test.sh
```

This runs a set of tests and lists the errors each test encountered, if any. A detailed list of the test results is written to `test.log`.

To run an individual test, such as `insert.test`, execute the following command in the `../build_unix/sql` directory:

```
./testfixture ../../sql/sqlite/test/insert.test
```

## Running SQL Test Suite on Windows

After the test suite is built (see [Building the software needed by the SQL tests \(page 25\)](#) for more information) and before running the entire test suite, go to `../sql/adapter/bdb-test.sh` and edit the line:

```
echo $t: `alarm $TIMEOUT ./testfixture.exe  
$tpath 2>&1 | tee -a test.log | grep "errors out of"  
|| echo "failed"``
```

to

```
echo $t: `alarm $TIMEOUT Win32/Debug/testfixture.exe  
$tpath 2>&1 | tee -a test.log | grep "errors out of"  
|| echo "failed"``
```

Running the test suite requires an Unix emulator, such as Cygwin. In a Cygwin window go to the `../build_windows` directory and execute the command:

```
sh ../sql/adapter/bdb-test.sh
```

This runs a set of tests and lists errors that each test encountered, if any. A detailed list of the test results is written to `test.log`.

To run an individual test, such as `insert.test`, execute the following command in the `../build_windows` directory:

```
Win32/Debug/testfixture.exe ../sql/sqlite/test/insert.test
```

## Test suite FAQ

### 1. The test suite has been running for over a day. What's wrong?

The test suite can take anywhere from some number of hours to several days to run, depending on your hardware configuration. As long as the run is making forward progress and new lines are being written to the `ALL.OUT` files, everything is probably fine.